Life cycle, biochemistry and chemotherapy of *Spironucleus vortens*

A thesis submitted for the degree of

*Philosophiae Doctor* (Ph.D)

by

Catrin Ffion Williams

April 2013

School of Biosciences
Cardiff University
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This project would not have been possible without the help and support of a number of people along the way. Firstly, I would like to thank my supervisors: Dr Joanne Cable for her expert guidance and encouragement throughout the project and Dr Michael Coogan for his invaluable advice in the field of Chemistry. Thank you to my mentor Professor David Lloyd for introducing me to this field and sharing with me his wealth of knowledge, broad-ranging experimental methods and countless humorous anecdotes! Many thanks to both my supervisors and mentor for their patience in reading and correcting the mountain of paperwork I have supplied and for providing me with so many opportunities to collaborate and present my research publicly.

Thank you to the EPSRC and Neem Biotech Ltd for funding this PhD. A special thanks to Drs David Williams, Gareth Evans and Robert Saunders (all of Neem Biotech Ltd) for supplying the purified garlic compounds used during this project and for their helpful advice in the nutraceutical field.

Many thanks to Cardiff University staff Dr Tony Hayes for his support with confocal microscopy, Professor Eshwar Mahenthiralingam for allowing me to use his lab facilities and Mr Michael O’Reilly for his help with GC-MS analyses. A huge thank you to all the individuals who hosted me at their labs during this project: Dr David Leitsch (Medical University of Vienna) for introducing me to the world of proteomics and repeating my 2DE analyses included in Chapter 5; Professor Nigel Yarlett (Pace University, NY) for his help with HPLC analyses included in Chapter 7 and Dr Miguel Aon (Johns Hopkins University, MD) for assisting me with the spectrofluorometric techniques included in Chapters 6 and 7. Thank you to Dr Daniel Kolarich and Mr Kathrivel Alagesan (both at the Max Planck Institute of Colloids and Interfaces, Berlin) for running the LC-MS and subsequent mass spectrometric data analysis included in Chapter 5. Thanks also to Dr Sarah Poynton (Johns Hopkins University, MD) and Dr Anders Jørgensen (Norwegian Veterinary Institute) for their contributions towards the morphological and molecular information (respectively) in Chapter 1.

A number of undergraduates were involved in the experiments conducted during this PhD: a big thanks to Anna Rita Vacca, Lee Dunham, Iwan Lewis and Michael Osborne for providing a helping hand. Thank you to Dr Coralie Millet, for introducing me to our dear friend “Spiro”, for all her hard work in establishing the *Spiroplasma vortens* culture in our lab and her contribution towards the biological information in Chapter 1. Thanks to Miss Eleanor Sherrard-Smith for her help in calculating the 80/20 rule (Chapter 3) and to Dr Bettina Schelkle for her patience in teaching me the joys of R and for being a friend.

To all my friends who have been there for me along the way, especially Vanessa, Alex, Carys and Tina: thank you for keeping my spirits high, I am greatly indebted to you all!

Thank you to my family: Mam, Dad, Rhodri and Mamgu Molly. Also to Dadcu Gwilym and Auntie Margaret, I wish you could be here now. You have always believed in me and spurred me on towards success. I hope I have made you proud.

Finally, to my partner and best friend Iwan: thank you for being there through the highs and the lows, for your help, encouragement and keeping a smile on my face. Without you none of this would have been possible.
DECLARATION AND STATEMENTS

DECLARATION
This work has not been submitted in substance for any other degree or award at this or any other university or place of learning, nor is being submitted concurrently in candidature for any degree or other award.

Signed …………………………………… (candidate)     Date ……………………………

STATEMENT 1
This thesis is being submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of PhD.

Signed …………………………………… (candidate)     Date ……………………………

STATEMENT 2
This thesis is the result of my own independent work/investigation, except where otherwise stated. Other sources are acknowledged by explicit references. The views expressed are my own.

Signed …………………………………… (candidate)     Date ……………………………

STATEMENT 3
I hereby give consent for my thesis, if accepted, to be available for photocopying and for inter-library loan, and for the title and summary to be made available to outside organisations.

Signed …………………………………… (candidate)     Date ……………………………

STATEMENT 4: PREVIOUSLY APPROVED BAR ON ACCESS
I hereby give consent for my thesis, if accepted, to be available for photocopying and for inter-library loans after expiry of a bar on access previously approved by the Academic Standards & Quality Committee.

Signed …………………………………… (candidate)     Date ……………………………
# CONTENTS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS........................................................................................................... i
DECLARATION AND STATEMENTS......................................................................................... ii
CONTENTS.................................................................................................................................. iii
TABLE OF CONTENTS................................................................................................................. iii
LIST OF FIGURES .................................................................................................................... viii
LIST OF TABLES ........................................................................................................................ ix
ABBREVIATIONS ..................................................................................................................... xi
PUBLICATIONS .......................................................................................................................... xv
SUMMARY ................................................................................................................................... xviii

## CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION................................................................................................. 1

1.1. OVERVIEW ......................................................................................................................... 1

1.2. LIFE CYCLE ....................................................................................................................... 3

1.3. TAXONOMY AND IDENTIFICATION ............................................................................... 5

1.3.1. Reference Specimens .................................................................................................. 5

1.3.2. Morphological Identification ....................................................................................... 6

1.3.3. Molecular identification and genetics .......................................................................... 10

1.3.4. Phylogeny of *Spironucleus* ...................................................................................... 13

1.4. HOST-PATHOGEN INTERACTIONS ................................................................................. 15

1.4.1. Distribution and Host Specificity ................................................................................ 15

1.4.2. Pathogenicity in Wild versus Farmed Fish ............................................................... 16

1.4.3. Microhabitat Preferences ............................................................................................. 18

1.4.4. Pathology and Clinical Manifestation ....................................................................... 19

1.5. PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOCHEMISTRY ............................................................................... 21

1.6. DISEASE MANAGEMENT ............................................................................................... 25

1.6.1. Treatment ..................................................................................................................... 25

1.6.2. Preventative Measures ............................................................................................... 26

1.6.3. Economical Impact ..................................................................................................... 27

1.7. CONCLUSIONS ............................................................................................................... 27

1.8. THESIS AIMS .................................................................................................................. 29
CHAPTER 2: GENERAL METHODS

2.1. Fish origin and general maintenance ........................................ 41
2.2. Parasite origin and general maintenance ................................... 41
2.3. Automated optical cell density monitoring ................................ 42
2.4. Determination of protein content ............................................. 42
2.5. References ............................................................................. 43

CHAPTER 3: Non-invasive estimation of *Spironucleus vortens* in angelfish
provides novel insights on the transmission of this diplomonad parasite... 45

3.1. ABSTRACT ............................................................................. 45
3.2. INTRODUCTION ..................................................................... 45
3.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS .................................................... 48
   3.3.1. Fish origin and general maintenance .................................... 48
   3.3.2. Parasite origins ............................................................... 48
   3.3.3. Species-level identification of *S. vortens* using 16S rDNA PCR .. 49
   3.3.4. Detection and quantification of *S. vortens* trophozoites in angelfish faeces by light microscopy ......................................................... 50
   3.3.5. Comparison of infection prevalence and intensity via faecal and intestinal trophozoite counts ................................................................. 50
   3.3.6. Pareto Principle (80/20 rule) .............................................. 51
   3.3.7. Survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites in faeces ....................... 51
   3.3.8. Survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites at varying pH *in vitro* .......... 51
   3.3.9. Putative *S. vortens* cysts ................................................... 52
   3.3.10. Statistical analysis ............................................................ 53
3.4. RESULTS ................................................................................. 53
   3.4.1. Identification of *S. vortens* trophozoites in fresh angelfish faeces ... 53
   3.4.2. Correlation between faecal and intestinal trophozoite counts ........ 54
   3.4.3. Aggregation of *S. vortens* infection in angelfish ...................... 54
   3.4.4. Survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites in faeces and varying pH .......... 57
   3.4.5. Attempted induction and identification of *S. vortens* cysts .......... 58
CHAPTER 4: Synergistic effect of garlic-derived ajoene oil and 5-nitroimidazole, metronidazole, against the ornamental fish parasite Spironucleus vortens .......... 70

4.1. ABSTRACT ............................................................................................................. 70
4.2. INTRODUCTION .................................................................................................... 71
4.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS ............................................................................. 73
   4.3.1. Fish origin and maintenance ........................................................................... 73
   4.3.2. Organism and culture ..................................................................................... 73
   4.3.3. Inhibitors ......................................................................................................... 73
   4.3.4. Gas chromatography mass spectrometry (GC-MS) ........................................ 73
   4.3.5. Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy ....................................... 74
   4.3.6. Automated optical cell density monitoring ..................................................... 74
   4.3.7. Preparation of fish food treatments ................................................................. 75
   4.3.8. In vivo treatment ............................................................................................. 76
4.4. RESULTS ............................................................................................................... 77
   4.4.1. Analysis of garlic-derived compounds present in ajoene oil ......................... 78
   4.4.2. In vitro inhibitory effect of Allium-derived compounds and MTZ against S. vortens ......................................................................................... 79
   4.4.3. In vitro synergistic activity of ajoene oil and MTZ against S. vortens growth............................................................................................................. 80
   4.4.4. In vivo combinations of ajoene oil and MTZ significantly reduce S. vortens infections .................................................................................................. 80
4.5. DISCUSSION ........................................................................................................ 81
4.6. REFERENCES ...................................................................................................... 87

CHAPTER 5: Disrupted intracellular redox balance of the diplomonad fish parasite Spironucleus vortens by 5-nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds 92

5.1. ABSTRACT ............................................................................................................. 92
5.2. INTRODUCTION .................................................................................................... 93
5.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS ............................................................................. 95
   5.3.1. Organism and culture ..................................................................................... 95
   5.3.2. Inhibitors ......................................................................................................... 95
5.3.3. Scanning electron microscopy (SEM) .............................................. 96
5.3.4. Sub-lethal incubation of *S. vortens* with inhibitors .......................... 97
5.3.5. Two-dimensional polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (2DE) .............. 97
5.3.6. Liquid chromatography mass spectrometry (LC-MS) ......................... 98
5.3.7. Mass spectrometric data analysis ......................................................... 99
5.3.8. Determination of thioredoxin reductase activity ................................. 100
5.3.9. Determination of total non-protein thiols ........................................... 101
5.3.10. Statistical analysis ............................................................................ 101
5.4. RESULTS ............................................................................................... 101
  5.4.1. Effects of metronidazole and garlic-derivatives on gross cellular
        morphology .......................................................................................... 101
  5.4.2. Covalent adduct formation of 5-nitroimidazoles with discriminate *S.
        vortens* proteins .................................................................................. 103
  5.4.3. Assignation of protein function to 5-nitroimidazole bound proteins .... 103
  5.4.4. TrxR inhibition by nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds ...... 104
  5.4.5. Effects of nitroimidazoles and garlic-derivatives on total non-protein
        thiols ...................................................................................................... 106
5.5. DISCUSSION .......................................................................................... 107
5.6. REFERENCES .......................................................................................... 113

CHAPTER 6: Glucose and glutamate: energy-yielding substrates of *Spironucleus*
*vortens* ........................................................................................................ 119
6.1. ABSTRACT .............................................................................................. 119
6.2. INTRODUCTION ...................................................................................... 119
6.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS ................................................................. 121
  6.3.1. Organism and culture ......................................................................... 121
  6.3.2. Spectrofluorometry ........................................................................... 122
  6.3.3. O₂ consumption by *S. vortens* ......................................................... 122
  6.3.4. Optical density growth monitoring ...................................................... 123
  6.3.5. Enzyme assays .................................................................................. 123
6.4. RESULTS .................................................................................................. 126
  6.4.1. Effects of metabolic substrates on redox dynamics of *Spironucleus*
        *vortens* by spectrofluorimetry .............................................................. 126
  6.4.2. Effects of metabolic substrates on O₂ uptake by *S. vortens* .............. 126
LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1. Depiction of the typical life cycle of *Spironucleus* spp. ...................................................... 4
Figure 1.2. Distinctive surface ornamentation of piscine diplomonads .................................................. 12
Figure 1.3. Phylogeny of diplomonads .................................................................................................... 17
Figure 1.4. Gas metabolism of *Spironucleus vortens* ............................................................................. 23
Figure 2.1. Bradford assay calibration curve ............................................................................................ 43
Figure 3.1. Amplified *Spironucleus* DNA banding after 16S rDNA PCR ............................................. 55
Figure 3.2. *Spironucleus* trophozoites in angelfish faeces ................................................................. 56
Figure 3.3. Scatterplot of variability in the total number of *Spironucleus* trophozoites observed per faecal sample ...................................................................................................................... 58
Figure 3.4. Correlation between faecal and posterior intestinal trophozoite counts .......................... 60
Figure 3.5. Transmission potential of *Spironucleus vortens* according to the 20/80 rule ........ 62
Figure 3.6. Staining of diplomonads with the GiardiaCel antibody ....................................................... 64
Figure 4.1. GC-MS chromatogram of sulphonated compounds present in ajoene crude oil extract .................................................................................................................................................. 79
Figure 4.2. Minimum inhibitory concentrations of garlic derivatives against *Spironucleus vortens* ................................................................................................................................................. 83
Figure 4.3. *Spironucleus vortens* Sv1 growth over time under incubation with various concentrations of metronidazole ..................................................................................................................... 85
Figure 4.4. Boxplots of *Spironucleus vortens* faecal trophozoite counts in angelfish before and after treatment ........................................................................................................................ 86
Figure 5.1. Scanning electron micrographs of *Spironucleus vortens* ..................................................... 102
Figure 5.2. Complete two dimensional gel electrophoretograms of protein spots of interest isolated from *Spironucleus vortens* before and after treatment with metronidazole ..................................................................................................................................................... 104
Figure 5.3. Comparison of shift patterns created by covalent adduct formation of *Spironucleus vortens* proteins with nitroimidazoles ............................................................................................................. 105
Figure 5.4. The inhibitory effects of 5-nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds on the NADPH-dependent activity of *Spironucleus vortens* thioredoxin reductase .............. 109
Figure 5.5. The effects of nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds on total non-protein thiol levels of *Spironucleus vortens* .............................................................................................................. 110
Figure 6.1. Spectrofluorometric detection of changes in intracellular NAD(P)H, FAD
and glutathione, extracellular production of H$_2$O$_2$ and cell size of *Spironucleus vortens*
after addition of substrates.................................................................127

**Figure 6.2.** Percentage differences in O$_2$ consumption by *Spironucleus vortens*, as compared to endogenous rates, after addition of substrates.................................129

**Figure 6.3.** Boxplots of *Spironucleus vortens* growth rates and final yields under different nutrient conditions..................................................................................130

**Figure 6.4.** Hypothesised pathways of glucose and glutamate metabolism and energy generation by *Spironucleus vortens*..................................................................................133

**Figure 7.1.** Glucose-supported O$_2$ consumption by *Spironucleus vortens*................149

**Figure 7.2.** Percentage inhibition of O$_2$ consumption rate by *Spironucleus vortens* by diallyl disulphide and ajoene oil.................................................................................150

**Figure 7.3.** Reverse-phase HPLC chromatograms of monobromobimane-derivatized non-protein thiols detected by fluorescence.................................................................151

**Figure 7.4.** Depletion of *Spironucleus vortens* glutathione by metronidazole and garlic derivatives..................................................................................................................152

**Figure 7.5.** The effect of metronidazole, auranofin and diallyl disulphide on the intracellular NAD(P)H, FAD, glutathione, H$_2$O$_2$ production and cell size of *Spironucleus vortens*..................................................................................154

**Figure 7.6.** Hypothesised antioxidant defense mechanisms of *Spironucleus vortens*....159

**LIST OF TABLES**

| Table 1.1. | Host-range, geographical location and micro-habitat of cultured *Spironucleus* spp. | 8 |
| Table 1.2. | Morphological identification of diplomonads | 11 |
| Table 1.3. | *Spironucleus* primers | 14 |
| Table 1.4. | *In vitro* culture conditions of *Spironucleus* spp. | 22 |
| Table 3.1. | *Spironucleus vortens* survival under acidic pH | 57 |
| Table 4.1. | $^1$H chemical shifts of ajoene isomers | 78 |
| Table 4.2. | *In vitro* fractional inhibitory concentration index of different combinations of metronidazole and ajoene against *Spironucleus vortens* | 80 |
| Table 4.3. | Efficacy of different treatments in reducing *Spironucleus vortens* faecal counts of infected angelfish | 81 |
| Table 5.1. | Final concentrations in μM of garlic-derived components used in quantification of *Spironucleus vortens* non-protein thiols | 96 |
Table 5.2. *Spironucleus vortens* proteins identified from the Capp database using MASCOT and ProteinScape.................................................................106

Table 6.1. *Spironucleus vortens* metabolic enzymes ........................................128

Table 7.1. O$_2$ consumption by *Spironucleus vortens*........................................149

Table 7.2. Documented intracellular antioxidants of *Spironucleus, Hexamita, Giardia, Trichomonas, Entamoeba, Trypanosomes and Plasmodium*......................156
### ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$[O_2]_{V=0}$</td>
<td>Lower O$_2$ tension at which O$_2$ consumption ceased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$[O_2]_{V=i}$</td>
<td>Upper O$_2$ tension which was inhibitory to O$_2$ consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16S</td>
<td>Small ribosomal RNA subunit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>Allyl alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Allyl disulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADH</td>
<td>Arginine dihydrolase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADH</td>
<td>Alcohol dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>Auranofin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIC</td>
<td>Akaike information criterion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aj</td>
<td>Ajoene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>Allicin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>Alanine aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMD</td>
<td>Allyl methyl disulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMS</td>
<td>Allyl methyl sulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANOVA</td>
<td>Analysis of variance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Allyl sulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AST</td>
<td>Aspartate aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATCC</td>
<td>American Tissue Culture Collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>Sodium aurothiomalate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATP</td>
<td>Adenosine triphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZO</td>
<td>Azomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp</td>
<td>Base pair(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSA</td>
<td>Bovine serum albumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>Concentration (moles/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM</td>
<td>Culture medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWP1</td>
<td>Cyst wall protein 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DADS</td>
<td>Diallyl disulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATS</td>
<td>Diallyl trisulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dH$_2$O</td>
<td>Distilled water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIC</td>
<td>Differential interference contrast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>Dimethyl sulfoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTNB</td>
<td>Ellman’s reagens 5-5’-dithiobis-(2-nitrobenzoic acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Molar extinction coefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Enzyme commission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTA</td>
<td>Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_t</td>
<td>Efficacy of treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAC</td>
<td>Ferric ammonium citrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAD</td>
<td>Oxidised flavin adenine dinucleotide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FADH₂</td>
<td>Reduced flavin adenine dinucleotide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDI</td>
<td>Flavodiiron protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fd_ox</td>
<td>Oxidized ferredoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fd_red</td>
<td>Reduced ferredoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIC</td>
<td>Fractional inhibitory concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR</td>
<td>Fenton reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTIC</td>
<td>Fluorescein isothiocyanate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC-MS</td>
<td>Gas Chromatography Mass Spectrometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDH</td>
<td>Glutamate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdh</td>
<td>Glutamate dehydrogenase (gene)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLM</td>
<td>General linear model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLMM</td>
<td>Generalized linear model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSH</td>
<td>Reduced glutathione</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSR</td>
<td>Glutathione reductase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSSG</td>
<td>Oxidized glutathione</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GST</td>
<td>Glutathione-S-transferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gtm</td>
<td>Glutamate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEPES</td>
<td>4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinetetraethylbenzene sulfonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEPPS</td>
<td>3-[4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl]-propanesulfonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HITH</td>
<td>Hole-in-the-head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPLC</td>
<td>High Performance Liquid Chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HWR</td>
<td>Harber-Weiss reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyd</td>
<td>Hydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC₅₀</td>
<td>Concentration which inhibits growth by 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEF</td>
<td>Isoelectric focusing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IND</td>
<td>Indifferent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kₘ</td>
<td>O₂ affinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kᵣ</td>
<td>O₂ tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Path length (1 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_0$</td>
<td>Faecal trophozoite count before treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH</td>
<td>Lactate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_1$</td>
<td>Faecal trophozoite count after treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mal</td>
<td>Malate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MALDI TOF MS/MS</td>
<td>Matrix Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization Tandem Mass Spectrometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBB</td>
<td>Monobromobimane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBC</td>
<td>Monochlorobimane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Methyl disulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDH</td>
<td>Malate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDO</td>
<td>Mitochondria-derived organelle(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ME</td>
<td>Malic enzyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>Minimum inhibitory concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTZ</td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Number of replicates/samples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD(P)$^+$</td>
<td>Oxidised nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (phosphate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD(P)H</td>
<td>Reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (phosphate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBCS</td>
<td>New born calf serum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Negative control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ND</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMR</td>
<td>Nuclear magnetic resonance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>NADH oxidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OD</td>
<td>Optical density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS</td>
<td>Phosphate buffered saline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>Positive control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Polymerase Chain Reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD</td>
<td>Propyl disulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDC</td>
<td>Pyruvate decarboxylase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDI</td>
<td>Protein disulphide isomerase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFOR</td>
<td>Pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pI</td>
<td>Isoelectric point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIPES</td>
<td>Piperazine-N,N'-bis(2-ethanesulfonic acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prx</td>
<td>Peroxiredoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS</td>
<td>Propyl sulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyr</td>
<td>Pyruvate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R₀</td>
<td>Basic reproduction number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBR</td>
<td>Rubrerythrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rDNA</td>
<td>Ribosomal DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROS</td>
<td>Reactive O₂ species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RP-HPLC</td>
<td>Reverse Phase High Performance Liquid Chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rRNA</td>
<td>Ribosomal RNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM</td>
<td>Scanning Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOD</td>
<td>Superoxide dismutase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSU</td>
<td>Small subunit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sv₁</td>
<td>New <em>Spironucleus vortens</em> isolate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP1-8</td>
<td><em>Spironucleus vortens</em> proteins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN</td>
<td>Synergy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCA</td>
<td>Trichloroacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TFC</td>
<td>Trophozoite faecal count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNB</td>
<td>2-nitro-5-thiobenzoate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trx</td>
<td>Thioredoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trx(S)₂</td>
<td>Oxidized thioredoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trx(SH)₂</td>
<td>Reduced thioredoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TrxR</td>
<td>Thioredoxin reductase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TZ</td>
<td>Tinidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WST-1</td>
<td>2-(4-iodophenyl)-3-(4-nitrophenyl)-5-(2, 4-disulphophenyl)-2H-tetrazolium, monosodium salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔA</td>
<td>Absorbance/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μ₁</td>
<td>First logarithmic growth phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μ₂</td>
<td>Second logarithmic growth phase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PUBLICATIONS

Refereed and submitted papers


17. Williams CF, Cable J, Yarlett N, Aon MA, Lloyd D (submitted). Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*: glutathione is the major non-protein thiol.

**Oral presentations**


**Poster presentations**


SUMMARY

*Spironucleus* is an opportunistic protozoan parasite capable of causing devastating losses in the production of both ornamental and food fish. Control of infection outbreaks is problematic due to restrictions on the use of chemotherapeutics and rapid parasite transmission amongst fish. This PhD investigated the life cycle, biochemistry and chemotherapy of *Spironucleus vortens*. Direct transmission of *S. vortens* was found to be facilitated by the trophozoite form, information which may be applied in aquaculture to prevent infection outbreaks. No *S. vortens* cysts were observed *in vitro* or *in vivo* and trophozoites were able to survive for prolonged periods in the faeces of angelfish. This novel finding facilitated development of a non-invasive method to quantify the degree of intestinal colonization in the host, which was then applied to determine the efficacy of new and existing chemotherapeutics against *S. vortens in vivo*. Garlic-derived compounds were shown to be realistic alternatives to the current drug of choice, metronidazole, in the treatment of Spironucleosis in fish. Synergy between metronidazole and the garlic-derived compound, ajoene, was also observed *in vitro* and *in vivo*. The mode of action of metronidazole and garlic-derivatives involved disruption of *S. vortens* intracellular redox balance, a pivotal cellular process which ensures normal cellular function and survival. Further biochemical investigations into the antioxidant defence system (consisting of glutathione, thioredoxin and superoxide dismutase) as well as the carbohydrate and amino acid metabolism of *S. vortens* provided greater understanding of the success of this organism as a parasite. This is reflected in its ability to withstand fluctuations in O$_2$ and nutrition during key pathogenic stages of its life cycle, including extra-intestinal systemic infection and transmission to a new host.
Chapter 1

Introduction
Chapter 1: Introduction

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

Adapted from:

"Spironucleus" species: Economically-Important Fish Pathogens and Enigmatic Single-Celled Eukaryotes

Caitlin F Williams¹, David Lloyd¹, Sarah L Poynton¹, Anders Jørgensen¹, Coralie OM Millet¹ and Joanne Cable²

¹School of Biosciences, Cardiff University, Cardiff CF10 3AT, Wales, UK
²Comparative Medicine, Johns Hopkins University, School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA
³Norwegian Veterinary Institute, Oslo, Norway

1.1. OVERVIEW

Diplomonads (suborder Diplomonadida, family Hexamitidae) are a group of aerotolerant anaerobic or microaerophilic flagellates, which possess a double set of cellular organelles. Amongst the diplomonad genera are Hexamita, Octomitus, Giardia and Spironucleus (Poynton & Sterud 2002). Species of Hexamita are mostly free-living organisms that reside in anaerobic water sediments (Fenchel et al. 1995), whereas the other taxa are almost exclusively parasites, which commonly occur in the intestinal tract of mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians and fish (Brugerolle 1975; Poynton et al. 1995; Sterud et al. 1998; Adam 2001; Cooper et al. 2004; Fain et al. 2008).

Spironucleus spp. are of particular importance in the aquaculture industry due to their ability to cause systemic infections in both ornamental and food fish (Nigrelli & Hafter 1947; O’Brien et al. 1993; Sterud 1998a; Sterud et al. 1998; Tojo & Santamarina 1998; Paull & Matthews 2001; Guo & Woo 2004a, b; Jørgensen & Sterud 2006). In 2009, fish accounted for 16.6% of the world population’s intake of animal protein and 6.5% of all protein consumed (FAO 2012). Hence, as wild fish stocks become increasingly depleted, fish farming is becoming a popular alternative to supply the ever increasing global demand for fish. Aquaculture is a multi-billion dollar industry which has been expanding at an average rate of 3.2% per year in the period of 1961-2009, outpacing the annual 1.7% increase in the world’s population (FAO 2012). Globally, capture fisheries and aquaculture supplied 148 million tonnes of fish in 2010, with a total value of US$217.5 billion (FAO 2012). Disease is a major limiting factor to aquaculture production, resulting in losses of 45% to the industry per annum (FDA 2012). Spironucleus spp. are ubiquitously found in tropical, temperate and cold waters and have
a broad host-range encompassing freshwater (O’Brien et al. 1993; Tojo & Santamarina 1998; Paull & Matthews 2001) and marine fish (Poynton & Morrison 1990; Sterud 1998b; Sterud et al. 2003; Jørgensen & Sterud 2004, 2006). Spironucleus salmonicida causes significant outbreaks of systemic Spironucleosis in Norwegian Salmo salar (Atlantic salmon) (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992; Poppe & Mo 1993; Sterud et al. 1998) and British Columbian Oncorhynchus tshawytscha (Chinook salmon) (Kent et al. 1992). In ornamental fish farms, Spironucleus vortens also causes outbreaks of systemic infections, which have been linked to a manifestation referred to as hole-in-the-head disease in aquaculture (Paull & Matthews 2001). Outbreaks of Spironucleosis results in significant host mortality (Guo and Woo 2004a&b).

Although the pathogenic potential of some Spironucleus spp. is widely accepted (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992; Poppe & Mo 1993; Sterud et al. 1998; Paull & Matthews 2001), it has been suggested that Spironucleus spp. are putative intestinal commensals, which become invasive in fish hosts with a compromised immune system or those which lack acquired immunity, under aquacultural conditions (Woo & Poynton 1995; Dawson et al. 2008). This is reflected in the observation that Spironucleus infections in wild fish are generally non-pathogenic (e.g. S. barkhanus in wild grayling, Sterud et al. 1997, and S. torosa in wild gadids, Poynton & Morrison 1990). Stressful conditions sometimes observed in aquaculture, including poor water quality, temperature fluctuations and overcrowding, have thus been implicated as triggers of Spironucleus pathogenesis (Bassleer 1983; Whaley & Francis-Floyd 1991; Woo & Poynton 1995).

Disease management and chemotherapy of Spironucleosis is problematic as important aspects of parasite transmission, host/geographical range and pathogenicity are poorly understood. Identification of infection outbreaks is especially difficult as is accurate diagnosis, due to the need for expert morphological investigations (using electron microscopy) or molecular techniques (such as 16S rDNA PCR) for species-level identification (Jørgensen & Sterud 2006). Confusion in the nomenclature, incomplete species descriptions and species misidentifications of hexamitid parasites further hinders advances in the field and inter- or intra-species comparisons are difficult as few specimens were deposited in reference collections. An added complication in infection control is the ban on use of the drug of choice, metronidazole, on European and American food fish farms (Commission Regulation No. 613/98, 1998; FARAD, 2010).

Research on many fish microparasites is hampered by an inability to fulfil Koch’s postulates. However, recent advances in our ability to identify cryptic species of
Spironucleus, to culture the pathogens and accurately monitor their biochemistry paves the way for a better understanding of diplomonad biology and subsequent parasite chemotherapy.

1.2. LIFE CYCLE

Identification of piscine diplomonads relies on the characterisation of two distinct stages of the life cycle; the easily recognized and actively swimming trophozoite, and the non-motile cyst form (Fig 1.1). The trophozoite is the feeding stage of the parasite (see Section 1.5 for nutritional requirements), which also undergoes asexual reproduction by longitudinal binary fission, as is typical for flagellates. This stage is most familiar to fish health investigators, since it is commonly encountered in the intestinal lumen, and less commonly in bile, blood, and organs (O’Brien et al. 1993; Poppe & Mo 1993; Poynton et al. 1995; Sterud et al. 1998; Paull & Matthews 2001; Guo & Woo 2004a). Prolonged in vitro culture of the trophozoite stage has been achieved in trypticase-yeast extract-iron (TY-I-S33) culture medium (Poynton et al. 1995; Sterud 1998a; Sangmaneedet & Smith 1999; Millet et al. 2010a).

Trophozoites typically do not survive for long periods in freshwater (Kent et al. 1992), but have been detected in fresh faecal samples from Oncorhynchus mykiss (rainbow trout) infected with S. salmonis (see Tojo & Santamarina 1998). The same study reported lack of S. salmonis cysts in the faeces of heavily infected fish, highlighting the rarity of these forms. Despite this, S. salmonis cysts have been observed in vivo (Moore 1922; David 1926) as well as in vitro (Uldal 1996). Cysts of other piscine Spironucleus spp. are poorly characterized. The cyst form facilitates direct transmission through the aquatic environment via the faecal-oral route (Woo & Poynton 1995); however transmission via skin lesions (Poppe et al. 1992) as well as through the rectal route by both cyst and trophozoite (Kent et al. 1992) has also been suggested. For those Spironucleus spp. where cysts have been documented, the resilience of the cyst wall confers protection against harsh external conditions including osmotic changes, high O₂ tensions and temperature fluctuations (Corliss 2001). After ingestion by a new host, the cyst passes along the digestive tract, and excysts releasing trophozoites and completing the life cycle (Woo & Poynton 1995).
Fig. 1.1. Depiction of the typical life cycle of *Spironucleus* spp. A flagellated *Spironucleus* trophozoite resides in the intestinal tract of the fish host, scale bar = 5 µm (a). Multiplication of the parasite leads to intestinal colonization (b), arrows indicate presence of numerous trophozoites in the intestinal lumen (transverse section). Invasion of the intestinal mucosa leads to systemic infection, manifesting as hole-in-the-head disease in ornamental fish (c), white arrows indicate small, bilaterally symmetrical lesions, black arrows indicate larger lesions which have coalesced (pers. obs.). Granulomatous nodules (indicated by arrows) in the liver and spleen are associated with systemic Spironucleosis in *Salmo salar* (d). Transmission of the parasite through the water body is facilitated via an encysted form (e), following intestinal colonisation (dashed line) or systemic infection. Images adapted from Paull and Matthews (2001) with permission from Inter-Research (a), Poynton et al. 2004 with permission from Inter-Research (b), pers. obs. (c) Guo and Woo 2004b with permission from Inter-Research (d) and Uldal 1996 with permission from The European Association of Fish Pathologists (e).
Details of the transformation from trophozoite to cyst (encystment), and from cyst to trophozoite (excystment) are poorly understood for piscine *Spironucleus*. As a result most details of the life cycle are inferred from avian (Wood & Smith 2005) and mammalian (Januschka et al. 1988; Koudela et al. 1996) *Spironucleus* spp., as well as the related genus *Giardia* in mammals (Kunstýr 1977; Kunstýr & Ammerpohl 1978; Brugerolle et al. 1980; Januschka et al. 1988). Common features of encystment in diplomonads are the quiescence of the trophozoite, production of cyst wall material in the cytoplasm and its trafficking to the surface, formation of the cyst wall and doubling of the flagellate within the cyst (Moore 1922; Kulda & Nohynkova 1978; Siddall et al. 1992). *In vitro* encystment of *S. salmonis* has been induced by starvation of trophozoites in spent culture medium (Uldal 1996). Furthermore, *in vitro* excystment of *S. muris* from mouse faeces was achieved by a low pH induction medium, followed by transfer to a neutral pH buffer or TY-I-S33 culture medium, mimicking passage of the cyst through the gastrointestinal tract (Koudela et al. 1996). Fundamental questions remain about the life cycle of *Spironucleus* in fish, including triggers for encystment, duration of infectivity, minimum infective dose and triggers for excystment.

1.3. TAXONOMY AND IDENTIFICATION

Although taxonomic confusion in the literature regarding the genera of diplomonads that infect fish remains, ultrastructural characterization has brought much needed clarity. Studies using only light microscopy have assigned the piscine diplomonads to *Hexamita, Octomitus* and *Spironucleus*. However, transmission electron microscopy has confirmed that all piscine diplomonads examined to date, belong unequivocally to the genus *Spironucleus*. Using this approach, 5 species of piscine diplomonads are currently recognized: *S. barkhanus, S. salmonicida, S. salmonis, S. torosa* and *S. vortens*. All of these species have only been comprehensively characterized from fishes in northwest Europe. However, given the global diversity of fish species, and the importance of aquaculture in Asia, it is likely that additional distinct species will be described from other parts of the world in the future.

1.3.1. Reference Specimens

Table 1.1 summarises the type host, type locality, type material and Accession Numbers of the best described *Spironucleus* spp. from fish, although even this is
incomplete. This is exemplified in a recent study, which demonstrates that *S. salmonicida* can be found in the intestine of wild *Salmo trutta* (Brown trout) and *Salvelinus alpinus* (Arctic charr) (Jørgensen et al. 2011). However, farmed *Salmo salar* (Atlantic salmon) were designated the type host of *Spiro.nucleus salmonicida* due to the lack of a wild host (Jørgensen & Sterud 2006). Based on current knowledge, Brown trout or Arctic charr should probably have been chosen as type host of *S. salmonicida*; however a formal re-description must then be undertaken. No reference material or sequence data are available from the original description of *S. elegans* (type host: amphibians) (Lavier 1936), although Brugerolle et al. (1973) provided a valuable ultrastructural description. Based on morphology, Poynton et al. (1995) considered a hexamitid isolated from angelfish to be different from *S. elegans* and thus described *S. vortens*. The conspecificity of *S. vortens* and *S. elegans* was later questioned due to the remarkable ultrastructural similarities between the two species (Sterud & Poynton 2002), but has not been resolved. *S. vortens* (type host: *Pterophyllum scalare*, angelfish) has been described from several species of aquarium fish and also from wild *Leuciscus idus* (ide) in Norway (Sterud & Poynton 2002). Subsequently, sequencing of the small subunit ribosomal RNA (SSU rRNA) gene revealed that the isolates from angelfish and ide were genetically more distant than *S. salmonicida* and *S. barkhanus* and therefore should be regarded as separate species (Jørgensen & Sterud 2007). However, again no formal description has been made.

1.3.2. Morphological Identification

The genus *Spiro.nucleus* have been subjected to considerable taxonomic confusion due to limited species descriptions based on light microscopy only. An example of this is illustrated by four Chinese studies which reported a total of 25 new species of *Spiro.nucleus* and *Hexamita* from various fish species (Xiao & Li 1993, 1994; Li & Nie 1995; Xiao et al. 2002). Most of these descriptions were based on light microscopy and/or poorly resolved ultrastructural data, thus these species should be regarded as insufficiently characterized. Detailed ultrastructural investigation, described below, using scanning and transmission electron microscopy is required in order to accurately distinguish between *Spiro.nucleus* spp. Table 1.2 summarizes genus and species-specific morphological characteristics of piscine diplomonads.

Morphological characterization of *Spiro.nucleus* is based upon the trophozoite form which is easily recognized, even by non-specialists. The cyst form has rarely been reported from fish, and ultrastructure information of this stage from fish hosts is not
available (Poynton & Sterud 2002). Trophozoites are characterised according to their distinct spherical to pyriform body, approximately 10–20 µm long and 5–10 µm wide, which is actively propelled through the water by the six anterior locomotory flagella. From the posterior of the body trail two additional flagella. Observation of actively swimming trophozoites shows that the six locomotory flagella are approximately 1.5 times the body length and emerge from the anterior body in two groups of three. The two trailing flagella are approximately twice the body length, and emerge from the posterior of the body close to each other. The six anterior flagella originate antero-medially, near the meeting of the nuclei, and travel just a short distance before emerging anterio-laterally. In contrast, the two posterior flagella, which also originate near the meeting of the nuclei, run within the body from the anterior to the posterior (through an invagination of the cell membrane called the flagellar pocket), and then emerge as trailing flagella (Poynton & Sterud 2002).

1.3.2.1. Light Microscopy

All genera of diplomonads have paired anterior nuclei, the exact shape and location of which are diagnostic for the genus. The nuclei of *Spironucleus* are elongate and taper anteriorly, lying very close to each other at the extreme anterior of the cell. Both *S. torosa* and *S. vortens* have an accessory cytoskeleton, composed of microtubular bands supporting surface ornamentation. In *S. torosa* these microtubular bands appear as two loops at the posterior of the cell, each representing the microtubules in a torus (raised round structure) surrounding the opening of the flagellar pocket (Poynton & Sterud 1990). Conversely, in *S. vortens*, the accessory cytoskeleton is evident as a dark staining area at the extreme posterior of the cell, representing the complex of counter-crossing microtubular bands supporting the elaborate folds between the emerging posterior flagella (Poynton et al. 1995).
Table 1.1. Host-range, geographical location and micro-habitat of cultured *Spironucleus* spp.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Type host</th>
<th>Additional hosts</th>
<th>Type locality</th>
<th>Location in host</th>
<th>Type material</th>
<th>Reference culture</th>
<th>Reference sequence (GenBank Acc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *S. barkhanus* | *Thymallus thymallus* | *Salvelinus alpinus*  
*Salmo trutta* | River Glomma, Norway | Lumen of gut and gall bladder | B | ATCC 50467 | DQ186581 |
| *S. elegans*  | *Triturus alpestris*  
*Rana rana* | *Pterophyllum scalare* | NA | Intestine | NA | NA | NA          |
| *S. salmonica* | *Salvelinus alpinus* | *Oncorhynchus namaykush*  
*Salmo salar* | Fiskfjorden, Norway (68°N, 15°E) | Systemic infection | C | ATCC 50377 | DQ181595 |
| *S. salmonis* | *Salvelinus fontinalis* | *Oncorhynchus mykiss* | Bath, New York State, USA | Digestive tract, upper intestinal region | NA | NA | DQ394703 |
| *S. tomosus*  | *Gadus morhua* | *Melanogrammus aeglefinus*  
*Lota lota* | Chebucto Head approach to Halifax Harbour, Nova Scotia, Canada | Digestive tract, rectum in cod | D | NA | EF050055 |
| *S. vortens*  | *Pterophyllum scalare* | *Leuciscus idus*  
*Symphysodon discus* | Archer, Florida, USA (29° 32'N, 82° 31W) | Lumen of intestine | A | ATCC 50386 | U93085 |

A Holotype slide of protargol-impregnated specimens and TEM block in the International Protozoan Slide collection at the National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution, Washington D.C. Accession number USNM #47820.

B TEM blocks and SEM stubs kept at the Norwegian School of Veterinary Science, Oslo, Norway.

C SEM stub: 180-1 (hapantotype) deposited in the International Protozoan Slide collection at the National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, D.C. Accession number USNM 1093603. TEM blocks: 2718-3, 2718-5, 2618-25 and 2618-30 representing paratypes are deposited at Norwegian School of Veterinary Science, Oslo.

D Holotype and numerous paratypes deposited in the Invertebrate Collection (Parasites), National Museum of Natural Sciences, Ottawa, Canada. Accession number NMCP 1988-0899.

1.3.2.2. **Electron Microscopy**

The surface of a *Spironucleus* trophozoite is mostly smooth, although discharging vacuoles undergoing exocytosis may be seen. In 4 out of the 5 well described *Spironucleus* spp. from fish, surface ornamentation is distinctive. Its function is unknown, but is useful for species identification (Fig 1.2). *S. barkhanus* and *S. salmonicida* have a crescent-shaped ridge (barkhan) around the opening of each flagellar pocket (Sterud et al. 1997), while *S. torosa* has a ring-shaped swelling (torus) around the flagellar pocket (Poynton & Morrison 1990) and *S. vortens* is characterised by lateral ridges bearing tufts of microfibrils, which then form counter-crossing ridges between the opening of the flagellar pockets (Poynton et al. 1995). The presence of posterior papillae is also characteristic of *S. vortens* (Poynton et al. 1995). *S. salmonis* lacks ornamentation (Poynton et al. 2004).

Internal ultrastructure reveals that the *Spironucleus* trophozoite is rotationally symmetrical about its long axis, with each cell having a double set of organelles (Brugerolle et al. 1973). The paired nuclei taper anteriorly and are wrapped around each other at their apices, forming an S-shape when viewed in transverse section of the anterior end of the cell. The cytoplasm of piscine diplomonads typically comprises a homogenous area at the apex of the cell, but elsewhere it is heterogeneous and organelle-rich. The latter contains a variety of organelles, which may include (depending upon species) electron-dense bodies, endoplasmic reticulum, membranous structures and ribosomes. *S. salmonis* is characterised by the presence of electron-dense bodies and a membrane-bound sac of free ribosomes around the opening of the flagellar pockets (Poynton et al. 2004; Sanghari-Fard et al. 2007a). Interestingly, the appearance of these cytoplasmic organelles can vary between *Spironucleus* harvested directly from the fish, and those maintained in culture (Poynton & Sterud 2002). Glycogen granules, vacuoles and bacteria may also be present in the cytoplasm (Poynton & Morrison 19990; Poynton & Sterud 2002). There are no Golgi or mitochondria present. However, recent studies suggest the presence of degenerate mitochondria, called hydrogenosomes, present within *S. vortens* (see Millet 2009) and *S. salmonicida* (see Jelström-Hultqvist 2012). Unlike mitochondria, these organelles lack DNA and cytochromes, thus oxidative phosphorylation does not take place. They do however retain some key mitochondrial features, including a double membrane, ATP production by substrate level phosphorylation of pyruvate and iron sulphur cluster assembly (see review by Shiflett &
Johnson 2010). As the name suggests, the main role of hydrogenosomes within the cell is to produce H$_2$ (discussed further in Section 1.5) (Bui et al. 1996).

### 1.3.3. Molecular identification and genetics

Until recently ultrastructure was considered sufficient to differentiate species of piscine diplomonads; however this is not entirely the case. New species descriptions of *Spironucleus* spp. should include both ultrastructural and molecular data. Guidelines for ultrastructural description of diplomonad flagellates have been presented by Poynton and Sterud (2002) and 16S PCR primers have now been developed for several taxa (Table 1.3). Sequence data of other genes, such as glutamate dehydrogenase (gdh) and $\alpha$-tubulin are also available for *S. vortens*, *S. barkhanus* and *S. salmonicida* (see Andersson & Roger 2002; Andersson et al. 2003, 2007; Jørgensen & Sterud 2004, 2006, 2007; Kolisko et al. 2008). However, the SSU rRNA gene appears to be a suitable marker for species identification in the genus *Spironucleus*, even for morphologically cryptic species. This is exemplified by *S. salmonicida* and *S. barkhanus*, which are morphologically identical, but display only 92.7% similarity in 1154 bp of the SSU rRNA gene. For *S. torosa*, variation in the SSU rRNA gene separates the species into two genotypes that may be related to the two different morphologies observed (Jørgensen et al. 2007). However this genetic variation was not considered sufficient to warrant species status for the two clades (Jørgensen et al. 2007). Phenotypic differences also exist between isolates of *S. salmonicida*. The isolate causing disease in Canadian *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* (Chinook salmon) could not establish in Atlantic salmon (Kent et al. 1992; Guo & Woo 2004b). Clinical signs and pathology in Chinook salmon also differed from those observed in *S. salmonicida* infections of Atlantic salmon in Norway. No sequence differences in the SSU rRNA, $\alpha$-tubulin or gdh genes have been identified between these isolates. Completion of ongoing genome projects of *S. barkhanus* and *S. vortens* will reveal a wide range of markers for diagnostic, taxonomic, systematic and for functional studies (Andersson et al. 2007; Dawson et al. 2008; Roxström-Lindquist et al. 2010). An episomal protein-tagging shuttle vector system has already been developed for *S. vortens* (see Dawson et al. 2008) and stable transfection of *S. salmonicida* has been achieved (Jerlström-Hultqvist et al. 2012), enabling studies of protein expression, intracellular trafficking and cell signalling in *Spironucleus*. 
Table 1.2. Morphological identification of diplomonads. Important ultrastructural aspects for genus and species level identification of diplomonad genera and *Spironucleus* spp. respectively. Adapted from Poynton and Sterud (2002) with permission from John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GENUS-LEVEL IDENTIFICATION</th>
<th>Spironucleus</th>
<th>Hexamita</th>
<th>Octomitus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genera</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flagellar pockets (cytostomal canals)*</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central axis formed by recurrent axonemes, microtubular bands, endoplasmic reticulum</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two terminal spikes</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape of nuclei</td>
<td>S-shaped</td>
<td>Spherical</td>
<td>Reniform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location of kinetosomes relative to nuclei</td>
<td>Sub-apical</td>
<td>External structure</td>
<td>Between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position of recurrent flagella relative to nuclei</td>
<td>Medial</td>
<td>Lateral</td>
<td>Medial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supra-nuclear microtubular band</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infra-nuclear microtubular band</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPECIES-LEVEL IDENTIFICATION</th>
<th>S. barkhanus / S. salmonicida</th>
<th>S. salmonis</th>
<th>S. torosa</th>
<th>S. vortens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Species</td>
<td>S. barkhanus / S. salmonicida</td>
<td>S. salmonis</td>
<td>S. torosa</td>
<td>S. vortens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flagellar pocket ornamentation</td>
<td>Crescent-shaped (barkhan)</td>
<td>No ornamentation</td>
<td>Ring-shaped swellings (torus)</td>
<td>Counter-crossing ridges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microtubular pattern around flagellar pocket</td>
<td>3 radiate bands</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3 concentric bands</td>
<td>3 staggard bands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinctive organelles</td>
<td>Hydrogenosomes(^b)</td>
<td>Electron-dense bodies / membrane-bound sac of free ribosomes</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Hydrogenosomes(^b)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)When present, the recurrent flagella are ensheathed

\(^b\)May also be present in other *Spironucleus* spp. but currently only documented in *S. vortens* and *S. salmonicida*
Fig. 1.2. Distinctive surface ornamentation of piscine diplomonads. Anterior-lateral view of *Spironucleus salmonis* showing emergence of anterior flagella and unadorned surface (a). Ventral or dorsal view of *S. vortens* posterior end, with counter-crossing of right peripheral ridges around exits of recurrent flagella. Presence of papillae is also of diagnostic value (b). Lateral view of *S. torosa* which has ring-shaped swellings (tori) surrounding the exits of recurrent flagella (c). Oblique view of *S. barkhanus* recurrent flagella surrounded by crescent shaped ridges (barkhans), this is also found in the the morphologically indistinguishable *S. salmonicida* (d). Abbreviations: (af) anterior flagella; (cb) crescent-shaped ridge (barkhan); (de) depression; (o) opening of flagellar pockets (cytostomal canals); (p) papilla (r) recurrent flagellum; (t) torus (scale bars = 1 µm). Adapted from Saghari-Fard et al. 2007a with permission from Inter-Research (a), Poynton et al. (1995) with permission from John Wiley & Sons Ltd (b), Sterud 1998b with permission from American Society of Parasitologists (c) and Sterud et al. 1998 with permission from Inter-Research (d).
Although genome sequencing of *S. salmonicida* has not yet been completed, genomic surveys of this parasite has revealed a reduced and compact genome with genes lacking introns, and several genes had apparently been acquired from different bacteria (Andersson & Roger 2003; Andersson et al. 2003, 2004, 2007). The genome of *S. salmonicida* has also been compared to more than 5000 expressed sequence tags (ESTs) from the morphological indistinguishable species *S. barkhanus*. The genome size of *S. salmonicida* and *S. barkhanus* is ~12 Mb and 16 Mb, respectively. In addition, codon usage and frequency of allelic variation also differs in the two species. This indicates that at least parts of the *S. barkhanus* genome have been duplicated and that these morphological indistinguishable species have been subjected to extensive divergent evolution (Roxström-Lindquist et al. 2010).

1.3.4. Phylogeny of *Spironucleus*

The diplomonads have been considered to be amongst the earliest eukaryote lineages and true intermediates in the prokaryote-eukaryote transition (Cavalier-Smith 1983). The apparent lack of eukaryotic organelles within diplomonads suggested that they diverged from other eukaryotes prior to acquisition of the mitochondrial endosymbiont. As a result, these organisms were included as members of the paraphyletic Archezoa Kingdom (Cavalier-Smith 1983). However, it was later shown that the diplomonads contained remnants of mitochondrial symbiosis. Furthermore, several mitochondrial genes were discovered in the genomes of other Archezoa (including *Giardia*) (Clark & Roger 1995; Germot et al. 1997; Embley & Hirt 1998; Hashimoto et al. 1998) suggesting that ancestors of the diplomonads once harboured the α-proteobacteria endosymbiont. Later, mitochondrion-like organelles, hydrogenosomes and mitosomes, were found in several amitochondriate eukaryotes, including *Giardia* and *Spironucleus* (see Tovar et al. 1999, 2003; Maiden 2006; Millet 2009; Jelström-Hultqvist 2012). As a result, the diplomonads have recently been re-classified into the Fornicata clade of the eukaryotic supergroup Excavata (Simpson 2003).

Currently, the genus *Spironucleus* is a member of the Diplomonadida which also contains the genera *Giardia, Octomitus, Hexamita, Enteromonas, Trimitus* and *Trepomonas* (see Kolisko et al. 2008). Phylogenetic analysis of the genus *Spironucleus* has been based on SSU rRNA gene data (Keeling & Doolittle 1996a,b; Keeling & Brugerolle 2006; Jørgensen & Sterud 2007; Kolisko et al. 2005, 2008). *Spironucleus* constitutes three branches in the Hexamitinae sub-tree (Fig 1.3). The clade containing *S.*
salmonicida, S. barkhanus, S. torosa and also the tortoise *Spironucleus* sp. isolate GEPA2H seems to be the most basal in the genus *Spironucleus*. *S. salmonis* and *S. vortens* are sister taxa in all SSU analyses and branch off secondary to the clade containing marine *Spironucleus* and the tortoise isolate. Both these clades are well supported. The position of the clade consisting of *S. meleagridis* (type host: birds) and *S. muris* (type host: rodents) varies and is never well supported by any tree-building method (Poynton et al. 1995; Kolisko et al. 2005, 2008).

**Table 1.3. *Spironucleus* primers.** These allow amplification of the small subunit ribosomal RNA (SSU rRNA) gene for identification of fish diplomonads to the genus or species level using PCR or sequencing. Spiro-1 and Spiro-2 primers will amplify most members of the genus *Spironucleus* and *Hexamita*. Spiro-3 to Spiro-6 may be used as sequencing primers for most species of *Spironucleus* and *Hexamita*. The Spironucleosis, Salmonis and Torosa primers are specific for *S. salmonicida*, *S. salmonis* and *S. torosa*, respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primer name</th>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spiro-1f</td>
<td>AAGATTAAGCCATGCATGCC</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td>Jørgensen &amp; Sterud 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiro-2r</td>
<td>GCAGCTTGTACGACTTCTC</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiro-3r</td>
<td>CATTGGGGAATTYCCGCCCT</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiro-4f</td>
<td>GAYTCYGGAGAVTGRGCAYGAG</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiro-5r</td>
<td>STYTCCGTCAATMCYTTMAAGTTTC</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiro-6f</td>
<td>AAGRYTGAAACTTKAARGKATTGACGG</td>
<td>Sequencing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spironucleosis-1f</td>
<td>TCATTATCAGTGTTAGTACATGC</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spironucleosis-2r</td>
<td>TCCAAGCCTAACACCAGCAAG</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonis-1f</td>
<td>TTGTGTACGGAGGCAGTACG</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td>Fard et al. 2007a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonis-2r</td>
<td>TCCCCGGTTGGTGGTCAAG</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torosa 16sf</td>
<td>CTCTTGAAGGGTAGTGACGGCAGC</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td>Jørgensen et al. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torosa 16sr</td>
<td>GTTCCGAATAAATCAACCAAGACC</td>
<td>PCR/Seq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Based on the habitat of their hosts, it was suggested by Jørgensen and Sterud (2007) that the three *Spironucleus* clades may have evolved separately in the sea, in freshwater and on land. This was later refuted by Kolisko et al. (2008), due to presence of the terrestrial GEPA2H tortoise isolate in the ‘marine’ *Spironucleus* clade. However, the phylogeny of the diplomonads and *Spironucleus* probably suffers from low taxon sampling with only 8 *Spironucleus* species included in the most recent studies (Jørgensen
& Sterud 2007; Kolisko et al. 2008). This speculation is strongly supported by the aforementioned Chinese studies, describing a total of 25 new species of *Spironucleus* and *Hexamita* from fish (Xiao & Li 1993, 1994; Li & Nie 1995; Xiao et al. 2002). As with most fish pathogens, present records do not reveal the complexity of diplomonad diversity. More sampling of diplomonads from a broader geographical and host range is required in order to understand the evolutionary processes which led to the adaptation of these organisms to such different environments and resulted in the morphological and genetic diversity seen today.

1.4. HOST-PATHOGEN INTERACTIONS

1.4.1. Distribution and Host Specificity

Piscine diplomonads infect both wild and farmed fishes globally, encompassing marine to freshwater habitats, and arctic to tropical climates. The diplomonad fauna of fishes is best known from regions of the world where fisheries and aquaculture provide key sources of protein for human consumption, such as Europe (Kulda & Lom 1964; Sterud et al. 1998; Tojo & Santamarina 1998), North America (Kent et al. 1992) and increasingly China (Xiao & Li 1993, 1994; Li & Nie 1995; Xiao et al. 2002). Most of the recent reports of *Spironucleus* are in commercially important species of fish, particularly those in aquaculture that are raised as food fish or as ornamentals. Thus, there is a sense that this genus of flagellates is primarily found in cichlids, cyprinids, gadids and salmonids. However a broader consideration of the literature, including numerous older publications focusing on ecological parasitology and surveys, shows that diplomonads are commonly encountered in many more families of fish.

Since reliable species identification of *Spironucleus* is rare, a sound understanding of host range has not yet been achieved. Some species of *Spironucleus* have a broad host range, being reported from a variety of host species. For example, *S. salmonis* infects *Salvelinus fontinalis* (brook trout), rainbow trout, brown trout, Arctic charr and *Gasterosteus aculeatus* (three-spined stickleback) (Moore 1922; Davis 1926; Sanghari-Fard et al. 2007a; Jørgensen et al. 2011). However, innate immunity may also play a role in host-susceptibility. Surveys show that not all species of fish in a given habitat are infected. In an infection trial conducted by Kent et al. (1992), Atlantic salmon were not susceptible to experimental infection with an isolate of *S. salmonicida* from Chinook salmon. Conversely, Guo and Woo (2004b) found that 3 different families of Atlantic salmon remained fully susceptible to experimental infection with *S. salmonicida* isolated
from Atlantic salmon. A genetic basis for susceptibility within host families has been suggested (Guo & Woo 2004b). Cross infection is even feasible across animal groups; with *S. elegans* from newts infecting angelfish (Kulda & Lom 1964). Moreover, individual fish may be co-infected, for instance with *S. salmonis* and *S. salmonicida* (see Jørgensen et al. 2011). This implies that in previous studies, clinical disease and pathology may have actually been caused by multiple hexamitid infections. This underlines the need to use molecular methods for identification of *Spironucleus* spp.

### 1.4.2. Pathogenicity in Wild versus Farmed Fish

*Spironucleus* spp. are found in high prevalence in both wild and farmed fish, however, the pathogenicity of isolates varies greatly between these two host habitats. For example, *S. barkhanus* and the morphologically indistinguishable *S. salmonicida* infect wild and farmed fish, respectively. However, systemic Spironucleosis has only ever been observed for *S. salmonicida* in aquaculture, whilst *S. barkhanus* infections in wild fish are generally commensal (Jørgensen & Sterud 2006). Furthermore, the *S. vortens* isolate recently characterized in wild Norwegian ide has not been associated with Spironucleosis in these fish; however, farmed cichlids are extremely susceptible to this parasite (Paull & Matthews 2001; Sterud & Poynton 2002). This difference in susceptibility between wild and farmed fish has led to the description of *Spironucleus* spp. as opportunistic pathogens, whereby pathogenesis is favoured over commensalism in an immunocompromised host. Factors such as poor water quality, malnutrition, temperature fluctuations, bad husbandry and overcrowding all have been associated with stress of the fish host, and subsequent reduction in host immunity (Bassleer 1983; Rottmann et al. 1992; Francis-Floyd & Reen 1994; Woo & Poynton 1995). Some of these factors are unavoidable in aquaculture, which explains why farmed fish are more susceptible to disease than wild fish. However, a recent study by Meseck et al. (2007) has documented systemic Spironucleosis in Chinook salmon from Lake Ontario, meaning that disease outbreaks in wild fish cannot be ruled out.
Fig. 1.3. Phylogeny of diplomonads. Maximum likelihood phylogeny of Diplomonadida, Eopharyngia, constructed according to partial SSU rRNA gene sequence data. At each node, bootstrap support analysis values are given. Asterisks indicate unresolved bootstrap analyses. Reproduced from Jørgensen and Sterud 2007 with permission from Elsevier.
It is plausible that wild fish may serve as a reservoir of infection for farmed fish. For example, following a series of systemic Spironucleosis outbreaks in Norwegian fish farms (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992; Poppe & Mo 1993) it was hypothesised that wild feral Arctic charr were the source of parasite transmission to the sea-caged Atlantic salmon (Sterud et al. 1998). A more recent outbreak was observed in farmed Arctic charr, found in northern Norway (Sterud et al. 2003). The affected fish farm sourced their charr smolt from a hatchery which utilized water possibly infected with S. barkhanus from wild Arctic charr outside the farm. Despite the fact that no fish within the hatchery were found to harbour S. barkhanus, it was suggested that transmission of flagellates from wild to farmed char was the most likely source of the outbreak (Sterud et al. 2003). However, molecular analysis revealed large genetic differences in the isolates from wild and farmed fish, resulting in species reassignment of the farmed isolate to S. salmonicida. This led to a further reappraisal of the likely transmission route from wild feral populations to farmed stocks after their transfer to seawater (Jørgensen & Sterud 2004). Transmission of S. vortens from aquarium cichlids to wild ide has also been suggested, as a result of improper disposal of moribund or dead fish into domestic waste systems and/or dumping in lakes (Sterud & Poynton 2002). However, the large genetic differences between S. vortens isolated from wild and farmed fish implies a similar scenario to that of S. salmonicida, whereby species reassignment may be required (Jørgensen & Sterud 2007). Prevalence and intensity of Spironucleus infections have also been associated with fish age. This has particular importance for infections in aquaculture, where disease may only manifest at certain stages of the production cycle. For example the chronic disease associated with S. salmonis typically affects young fish, suggesting that there is acquired immunity to infection (Uldal & Buchmann 1996). In contrast, S. salmonicida causes disease in adult fish (Poppe et al. 1992; Kent et al. 1992; Sterud et al. 2003).

1.4.3. Microhabitat Preferences

In both wild and farmed fish, the intestinal tract is believed to be the natural habitat for piscine diplomonads. Most reports of Spironucleus in wild fish document the flagellates in the intestine, and less commonly in the gall bladder. Only in rare cases are wild fish reported to carry Spironucleus infections elsewhere; a particular case of note being the presence of Spironucleus spp. in abscess lesions in the somatic muscle adjacent to the dorsal fin of adult Chinook salmon from Lake Ontario (Meseck et al. 2007).
However, in farmed fish, systemic infections (including the presence of the flagellates in the blood) are common (discussed further in Section 1.4.4).

Certain species of piscine *Spironucleus* have particular microhabitat preferences within the intestine. For example, *S. salmonis*, commonly infecting farmed rainbow trout, is concentrated in the pyloric region (Sanghari-Fard et al. 2007a), while *S. torosa*, in wild gadids, clusters posterior to the ileo-rectal valve in the most posterior section of the intestine (Poynton & Morrison 1990). Different *Spironucleus* species may have different metabolic requirements, based on differences in the organelles in the heterogeneous cytoplasm (see Section 1.5). Along the length of the intestine, there are gradients in morphology, physiology and metabolic activity. In *S. salmonis*, the optimum and tolerable pH have been studied *in vivo* (Sanghari-Fard et al. 2007b) and *in vitro* (Buchmann & Uldal 1996). Flagellates survive within a pH range of 5.5-9.0, with optimal pH for population increase being between 7.5-8.0 (Buchmann & Uldal 1996). *In vivo*, however, parasite density within the intestinal tract did not correlate with optimal pH, suggesting that microhabitat preference is not dependent on this factor (Sanghari-Fard et al. 2007b).

Parasite-host interactions of *Spironucleus* spp. are poorly characterised. Of the few studies which address this topic it has been observed that *S. torosa*, which usually swims free in the lumen, can attach to the intestinal microvilli, with apparent cytoplasmic connections between the flagellates and fish cells (Poynton & Morrison 1990). There are also marked differences in the cytoplasmic organelles of the free-swimming and attached forms (Poynton & Morrison 1990). In the case of *S. vortens*, another species that is usually found in the intestinal lumen, there is the capacity to become systemic, infecting kidney, liver, spleen and head lesions (Paull & Matthews 2001). *Spironucleus* in farmed Arctic charr may even occur intracellularly within the capillaries and sinusoids of the liver, spleen and kidney (Sterud et al. 2003). Although there may be numerous parasites, gross and histopathological lesions are rare and mortality is low (Sterud et al. 2003). One of the most challenging questions in understanding microhabitat preference of piscine diplomonads concerns identification of the factors involved in onset and establishment of systemic infections.

### 1.4.4. Pathology and Clinical Manifestation

Spironucleosis ranges from an asymptomatic to chronic disease, with the main clinical symptoms consisting of anorexia, weight loss, lethargy, enteritis, dark
colouration, pale gills and egestion of stringy faeces (Woo & Poynton 1995; Uldal & Buchmann 1996). Infected fish also exhibit unusual swimming behaviour such as corkscrew movements, a tendency to swim on their side and to linger in the corner of tanks (Tojo & Santamarina 1998). In addition to direct morphological and molecular identification from tissues (see Sections 1.3.2 and 1.3.3), microscopic analysis of the host’s faeces provides a convenient method of non-invasively diagnosing Spironucleosis. Enumeration of parasites per field of view, allows an assessment of the severity of infection (Tojo & Santamarina 1998). Although both cysts and trophozoites have been isolated from the faeces of infected fish (Lom & Dyková 1992; Uldal 1996), the motile trophozoite form is more easily identified, with the cyst form being exceptionally rare (Kulda & Lom 1964; Kent et al. 1992; Tojo & Santamarina 1998).

Two main forms of Spironucleosis are described causing coelozoic (intestinal) and histozoic (systemic) infections. In both cases, fish may appear asymptomatic; however, severe clinical signs and pathology are observed in relation to disease outbreaks.

1.4.4.1. Intestinal Spironucleosis

The intestinal form of Spironucleosis (originally described as hexamitosis) in salmonid fingerlings and aquarium fish is generally considered to be benign (Uzmann & Jesse 1963; Uzmann et al. 1965). There is no doubt, however, that the occurrence of vast numbers of the parasite in the gut may lead to severe enteritis with emaciation, exophthalmia, ascites and faecal casts (Moore 1922; Davis, 1926; Ferguson & Moccia 1980). Symptoms are non-specific, but often include locomotive disorders and increasing mortalities.

1.4.4.2. Systemic Spironucleosis

Several diplomonad species may cause systemic infections in fish (Ferguson & Moccia 1980; Mo et al. 1990; Kent et al. 1992; Poppe et al. 1993; Fagerholm & Bylund 1997; Sterud et al. 1998; Paull & Matthews 2001). S. vortens infects a variety of fish species and is associated with hole-in-the-head (HITH) diseases in cichlids, e.g. angelfish and discus (Poynton et al. 1995; Paull & Matthews 2001). The disease is characterized by parasite-filled necrotic lesions in the head region, sometimes also extending posteriorly along the lateral line. Lesions are usually bilaterally symmetrical and may coalesce into larger lesions, discharging yellow mucus (Woo & Poynton 1995; Paull & Matthews
Large numbers of flagellates have been found in internal organs such as the heart, liver and kidney (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992; Poppe & Mo 1993). In addition, trophozoites of *S. vortens* were detected in the intestine of fish with systemic infections and it was suggested by Paull and Mathews (2001) that the infection had an intestinal origin.

Systemic infections caused by *S. salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon, are marked by parasite filled abscesses and pustules in subcutaneous muscle tissue, in necrotic tissue of the heart, kidney, liver and spleen, but never in the intestine (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe & Mo 1993; Sterud et al. 1998; Jørgensen & Sterud 2004, 2006). Typical histopathology of systemic infections with *S. salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon reveals severe epicarditis, large caseonecrotic areas with, at times, formation of granulomatus response in the kidney, liver and spleen. The characteristic paired anterior nuclei of the flagellates are usually observed centrally in the granulomas and foci of necrotic tissue (Poppe et al. 1992; Poppe & Mo 1993). *S. salmonicida* also causes systemic Spironucleosis in farmed Arctic charr and Chinook salmon. In these hosts the symptoms are somewhat different compared to the infection in Atlantic salmon. Granulomas in muscle tissues and internal organs are not apparent, but vast aggregates of parasites occur in the vasculature of most organs (Kent et al. 1992; Sterud et al. 2003).

Specific triggers for pathogenicity and onset of systemic infection are currently unknown, and may vary greatly between *Spironucleus* spp. due to differences in microhabitat preferences. The host immune system is likely to play a key role in protecting against Spironucleosis, however further work is required in order to categorise the immune response to *Spironucleus* infection, and understand subsequent methods of parasite evasion.

**1.5. PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOCHEMISTRY**

Knowledge regarding the biochemistry and physiology of *Spironucleus* spp. is paramount in order to understand mechanisms of pathogenicity, and consequent exploitation of novel molecular pathways for chemotherapeutic control. This has been made possible as a result of optimisation of *in vitro* culture for several *Spironucleus* isolates (see Table 1.4).
Table 1.4. In vitro culturing conditions of *Spironucleus* spp. This includes the source of the species and corresponding optimal culture medium composition and temperature (temperature range given in brackets). Reproduced from Millet 2009.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Culture medium</th>
<th>Temp. (ºC)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lip lesion, angelfish, Florida (ATCC 50386)</td>
<td>Keister’s modified TY-I-S33</td>
<td>25 (22-34)</td>
<td>Sangmaneedet &amp; Smith 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Spironucleus</em></td>
<td>Intestine, internal organs and head lesions of cichlids, UK</td>
<td>Keister’s modified TY-I-S33 supplemented with fresh <em>Oreochromis niloticus</em> liver</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Paull &amp; Matthews 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gall bladder of wild grayling, Norway</td>
<td>Keister’s modified TY-I-S33</td>
<td>15 (5-20)</td>
<td>Sterud 1998a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Spironucleus</em></td>
<td>Muscle abscess of farmed Atlantic salmon, Norway</td>
<td>Keister’s modified TY-I-S33</td>
<td>10 (5-20)</td>
<td>Sterud 1998a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>barkhanus</em></td>
<td>Blood, liver and kidney of farmed Atlantic char, Norway</td>
<td>Growth not supported by Keister’s modified TY-I-S33</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Sterud et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Spironucleus</em></td>
<td>Intestine of wild rainbow trout, Denmark</td>
<td>MEM with 10% bovine serum. Not supported by Keister’s modified TY-I-S33</td>
<td>10 (5-10)</td>
<td>Buchmann &amp; Uldal 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>salmonis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(Hexamita</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>salmonis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although detailed information on nutrient uptake, and pathways of carbon and nitrogen metabolism have not been investigated, a great deal on the physiology of fish diplomonads can be inferred from studies of nutritional and environmental conditions necessary for growth. This is especially true for *S. vortens* grown in vitro under anaerobic conditions in stoppered tubes with ascorbate and cysteine to ensure removal of traces of O$_2$ (Sangmaneedet & Smith 2000). Extremely rapid trophozoite multiplication corresponds to a mean generation time of 1.79 h at 25ºC (Millet et al. 2010a). Their copious production of H$_2$ (Fig 1.4), a metabolic product rare amongst eukaryotes, strongly suggests similarities to other flagellate parasitic protists that thrive in low O$_2$ environments, i.e. the parabasalid trichomonads and many diplomonads (Millet et al. 2010b). The progressive diminution of the aerobic life-style typical of their free-living ancestors, together with multiple lateral transfer of genes of bacterial origins have
enabled these parasitic organisms to prosper energetically without the traits of their mitochondriate free-living counterparts (Horner et al. 1996). Loss of a cytochrome-mediated respiratory chain driven by an electron transport system and its coupled proton driven ATP synthase, along with the acquisition of hydrogenases, characterizes a novel redox-active organelle, the hydrogenosome (Lloyd et al. 1979a,b) recently found in *S. vortens* and *S. salmonicida* (see Millet 2009; Jerlström-Hultqvist 2012).

**Fig. 1.4.** Gas metabolism of *Spiro nucleus vortens*. Cells were assayed in a stirred suspension of $7.4 \times 10^5$ cells/ml in air-saturated phosphate buffered saline at 20ºC, analysed by membrane-inlet mass spectrometry. Rates of O$_2$ consumption, H$_2$ production and CO$_2$ production were derived from linear regression at the indicated tangents (standard deviation and number of replicates are denoted in brackets). Reproduced from Millet et al. (2010b) with permission from John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

H$_2$ production in *S. vortens* is even more rapid than in *Trichomonas vaginalis*, a protozoan parasite with well-defined hydrogenosomes (Lindmark et al. 1975), and is similarly inhibited under microaerobic conditions. Cyanide- and CO-sensitivity in both organisms strongly suggests that the hydrogenase responsible is of the Fe-only category (Horner et al. 2000). This conclusion has been validated for *T. vaginalis* by redox
properties and furthermore by electron paramagnetic resonance spectroscopy, a powerful
technique frequently employed in the characterization of metal centres in iron-sulphur
proteins, such as hydrogenase (Chapman et al. 1986). Identification of a Fe-hydrogenase-
like sequence in the genome of *S. barkhanus* strongly supports these conclusions (Millet
et al. 2010b).

As in the trichomonads, well-washed, non-proliferating *S. vortens* from anaerobic
cultures avidly consume O\(_2\) (Fig 1.4) over periods of several hours even in the absence of
added substrates (Millet 2009). This denotes an exceptional O\(_2\) scavenging ability for
these parasites, which in turn suggests that they are well-equipped to cope with large
fluctuations in O\(_2\) levels during the course of infection or transmission. Their endogenous
capacity must reflect a considerable reserve of reduced carbon analogues, e.g. glycogen
as in *G. intestinalis* (see Pradhan et al. 2012), although the biochemical identity remains
to be established for *S. vortens*. As this O\(_2\) consumption does not directly provide energy
it should be regarded as an O\(_2\)-scavenging function rather than as respiration.

Both endogenous and glucose-driven metabolism in *S. vortens* yield CO\(_2\), ethanol,
acetate, alanine and lactate as revealed by membrane inlet mass spectrometry, \(^1\)H NMR
and \(^{13}\)C NMR (Millet et al. 2011). Ethanol can also be utilized, but like glucose is not as
favoured as amino acids. In this respect, cultures of *S. vortens* show characteristics
similar to those of some cultured mammalian cell lines where glucose uptake is slow and
amino acids are the favoured substrate (Millet et al. 2011). Cultures of *S. vortens*
analysed by ion-exchange chromatography at intervals over a period of 6 days indicate
that despite the presence of high concentrations of free amino acids, peptides and proteins
become depleted (Millet et al. 2011). Production of extracellular peptidases and proteases
is likely to be an essential aspect of their invasiveness potential during pathogenesis. Free
amino acids showing net gains during culture growth include glutamate, alanine and
aspartate, whereas lysine, arginine, leucine, cysteine and urea are extensively utilised.
Unlike *T. vaginalis*, *G. intestinalis* or *Hexamita inflata* (see Biagini et al. 2003), *S.
vortens* appears not to have the arginine dihydrolase (ADH) pathway for energy
production, as no ornithine has been detected. Addition of arginine to non-proliferating
cells has resulted in no detectable ammonia or nitric oxide production. However, many
homologues of the ADH pathway can be found in the *S. vortens* genome, thus the
presence of such an energy generation pathway in this organism cannot be completely
ruled out (Millet et al. 2011).
It should be emphasised that the physiology and underlying biochemical properties of *Spironucleus* species may vary widely, between and within species in relation to short time-scale changes of *in situ* microenvironments as well as the more profound changes expected at different life cycle stages. Factors pivotal in these respects include nutrient supplies and environmental O₂ concentrations. Central to the extreme limits for parasite viability and persistence is the intracellular redox potential which must be maintained for normal metabolic function and redox signalling. This in turn depends on adequate supplies of host-derived reduced carbon compounds for growth and energy production. Further research in these areas will improve our knowledge of key parasite biochemical processes relating to pathogenicity and transmission, and will provide an insight into the phenotypic diversity of diplomonads.

### 1.6. Disease Management

*In vitro* culture methods for routine maintenance of *Spironucleus* spp. provides convenient means of screening new and existing chemotherapeutic agents. Furthermore, recent developments in our understanding of piscine diplomonad biochemistry show potential for the development of novel strategies of disease management.

#### 1.6.1. Treatment

Treatment of salmonid infection is recommended when 15-20 trophozoites are counted microscopically per field of view (using 100 X total magnification) (Post 1987 cited in Woo & Poynton 1995). The most common chemotherapeutic means of eradicating human and veterinary diplomonad infections is metronidazole (Flagyl, Fiszole) (Tojo & Santamarina 1998; Sangmaneedet & Smith 1999). This is an unique, limited spectrum antibiotic that is used to combat anaerobic or microaerophilic, pathogenic microorganisms. When administered, the metronidazole pro-drug acts as a high affinity electron acceptor and is activated by reduction at the drug nitro group by the low redox potential electron transfer systems present in anaerobic/microaerophilic organisms (see review by Freeman et al. 1997). This in turn results in cytotoxic reduction products including nitro-radical anions which are suggested to cause cell death via DNA damage, leaving the aerobic host unaffected (Edwards 1993).

Metronidazole has a minimum inhibitory concentration of 1 µg/ml against *S. vortens in vitro*, with the recommended dose in ornamental fish being 10 mg per 1 g fish.
food (Millet 2009). For the treatment of food fish, 2-5 g/kg feed or 4 mg/L bath treatment is recommended (Tojo & Santamarina 1998), with oral administration being more effective than bathing (Whaley & Francis-Floyd 1991). However in 1998, European Council Regulation 613/98/EEC (Commission Regulation No. 613/98, 1998) banned the use of metronidazole on outdoor European fish farms, due to its environmental side effects (Lanzky & Halting-Sørensen 1997; Kümmerer et al. 2000; Jjemba 2002), cytotoxicity and genotoxicity in fish (Cavaş & Ergene-Gözükara 2005; Khalil et al. 2007), and it being listed as a potential human carcinogen by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC 1987). Administration of metronidazole to food animals is also banned in the US (FARAD 2010). As a further complication, resistance to metronidazole has been documented on some fish farms (Tojo & Santamarina 1998).

Other effective nitroimidazoles include benznidazole, ronidazole, secnidazole (Tojo & Santamarina 1998) and dimetridazole (Woo & Poynton 1995), the latter, however, has severe toxic side effects in fish (Tojo & Santamarina 1998). Some non-nitroimidazoles are also effective, including albendazole, aminosidine, diethylcarbamazine and nitroscanate, all at doses of 40 g/kg feed for a 10 day period (Tojo & Santamarina 1998). Furthermore, mebendazole, a highly active benzimidazole, has been shown to inhibit S. vortens growth in vitro at a concentration of 0.5 µg/ml (Millet 2009).

More recently, the inhibitory effect of Allium sativum (garlic) has been investigated as an alternative therapy for the treatment of Spironucleosis. Allium-derived compounds are broad-spectrum antimicrobial agents and thus are effective against a wide range of human and veterinary pathogens (see review by Williams & Lloyd 2012, Appendix 3). In vitro, ajoene and a mixture of vinyl dithiins and thiosulphinates extracted from garlic are highly effective at inhibiting S. vortens growth, having minimum inhibitory concentrations of 107 and 83 µg/ml respectively (Millet et al. 2010c). In vivo assays are required in order to determine the efficacy of garlic in fish. However, if successful, garlic-based therapy has the potential to provide a less toxic and more environmentally friendly alternative to metronidazole in the treatment of fish diplomonad infections.

1.6.2. Preventative Measures

Due to our current lack of knowledge regarding the transmission of Spironucleus to fish farms, along with the possibility of sub-clinical infections, eliminating this parasite
from aquaculture will not be possible in the short term. However, preventative measures can be employed in order to minimise the occurrence of an outbreak. These include, quarantine of new stock, use of appropriate under-gravel filters, frequent cleaning of tanks, good husbandry and healthy nutrition (Woo & Poynton 1995). Furthermore, ozonization and UV irradiation of inlet water greatly reduces pathogen entry into tanks (Litved et al. 1995). As outbreaks are associated with ‘stress’ of the host, care should be taken to ensure that water quality, aeration and temperature are maintained at an optimal level, especially when fish are under crowded conditions (Woo & Poynton 1995; Whaley & Francis-Floyd 1991). These are all factors which may contribute towards an outbreak (of this and other infectious diseases) by decreasing the efficiency of the fish immune system and thereby increasing susceptibility (Bassleer 1983). Identifying the source and method of transmission of *Spironucleus* into fish farms will lead to more specific measures to prevent outbreaks in aquaculture.

1.6.3. Economical Impact

Failures in prevention and control of Spironucleosis may cause severe economic losses both to fish farmers and the aquarium industry as a whole. Systemic Spironucleosis caused by *S. salmonicida* in Norwegian farms of Atlantic salmon has resulted in near or complete loss of all stocks at some farms (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992; Sterud et al. 1997). However, most infections reduced profits due to downgrading at slaughter and increased labour costs during the filleting process. *S. salmonis* may also have an economical impact on farming of rainbow trout due to reduced growth and increased mortality of young fry. *S. vortens* has a similar effect in the production of ornamental fish, resulting in loss of highly valuable specimens, including angelfish and discus *Symphysodon discus*, the trade of which is a multi-million dollar industry per annum (Andrews 1990).

1.7. CONCLUSIONS

Although piscine diplomonads have been described since the late 19th Century (Seligo 1887), our appreciation of the basic biology of these organisms remains in its infancy. However, our understanding of their taxonomy, biochemistry and pathogenicity has greatly increased in the last few years. Identification of morphologically cryptic *Spironucleus* spp. through SSU rDNA sequencing (Jørgensen & Sterud 2007) has considerably clarified fish diplomonad taxonomy. Furthermore, optimisation of *in vitro*
*Spironucleus* cultures has provided a convenient source of flagellates, allowing complete replacement of animal models for biochemical and physiological investigations of parasite pathogenicity. Such studies have revealed novel molecular pathways of gas metabolism, redox control and nutrition (Millet et al. 2010a, b; Millet et al. 2011), which are essential for our understanding of parasite pathogenicity and consequent exploitation of novel molecular pathways for chemotherapeutic control. This is especially important in light of restrictions on the use of metronidazole in aquaculture. *Allium*-derived compounds show great potential as alternative antiparasitic agents, although *in vivo* investigations are required to confirm efficiency at eradicating Spironucleosis in fish (Millet et al. 2010c).
1.8. THESIS AIMS

- Determine the mode of transmission of *S. vortens* between hosts and to specifically address the presence of an encysted stage
- Develop a non-invasive method of quantifying intestinal colonization by *S. vortens* in angelfish as a means of testing new and existing chemotherapeutics *in vivo*
- Evaluate the *in vitro* and *in vivo* inhibitory effects of metronidazole and garlic-derived compounds against *S. vortens*
- Investigate the mode of action of metronidazole and garlic-derivatives against *S. vortens* using microscopic, proteomic and fluorescence techniques
- Further investigate the role of glucose and glutamate as carbohydrate and amino acid metabolic substrates of *S. vortens*
- Characterize biochemical aspects of the antioxidant defence system of *S. vortens*, including the identity of the major protein and non-protein thiols

1.9. THESIS HYPOTHESES

- Piscine *Spironucleus* cysts are rarely seen *in vivo*, and have never been characterized for *Spironucleus vortens*, hence transmission of *S. vortens* is predicted to occur via the trophozoite form (Chapter 3)
- As *Spironucleus* spp. are transmitted via the faecal-oral route, enumeration of parasites in the host’s faeces is hypothesised to provide a non-invasive approach to estimating the degree of intestinal colonization by *S. vortens* in angelfish (Chapter 3)
- Metronidazole and garlic-derivatives act synergistically against *S. vortens* (Chapter 4)
- The mode of action of metronidazole and garlic-derivatives involves disruption of *S. vortens* intracellular redox balance (Chapter 5)
- Glucose is a secondary substrate of *S. vortens*, the primary substrate is hypothesised to be the amino acid glutamate, which is incorporated from the culture medium in high quantities (Chapter 6)
- The aerotolerant nature of *S. vortens*, an anaerobic organism, must reflect a sophisticated antioxidant defence system which detoxifies reactive O₂ species (Chapter 7)
1.10. THESIS LAYOUT

This thesis consists of a general introduction (Chapter 1) of *Spironucleus* spp., which has already been published as a review article in the Journal of Aquaculture Research and Development. This is followed by the general methodologies employed during the subsequent experimental chapters (Chapter 2). There are 5 experimental chapters in total (Chapters 3-7). These are self-contained chapters, some of which are in press (Chapter 3, Diseases of Aquatic Organisms), are already published (Chapter 5, Veterinary Parasitology) or have been submitted for peer review (Chapter 7). The remaining experimental chapters (Chapters 4 and 6) are in preparation for submission. The experimental chapters are followed by a general discussion (Chapter 8) which summarises the findings of the thesis and highlights important implications of the research as well as opportunities for future investigations. The appendix contains raw data from growth curve experiments as well as other published works which were side-projects to this PhD.
1.11. REFERENCES


Jørgensen A, Torp K, Bjørland MA, Poppe TT (2011). Wild Arctic char *Salvelinus alpinus* and trout *Salmo trutta*; hosts and reservoir of the salmonid pathogen *Spironucleus salmonicida* (Diplomonadida; Hexamitidae). Dis Aquat Org 97: 57-63


Chapter 1: Introduction


Chapter 1: Introduction


Sterud E. (1998b). Electron microscopical identification of the flagellate Spironucleus torosa (Hexamitidae) from burbot Lota lola (Gadidae) with comments upon its probable introduction to this freshwater host. J Parasitol 84: 947-953


Chapter 1: Introduction


Chapter 2

General Methods
CHAPTER 2: GENERAL METHODS

To avoid repetition, methods that are common to more than one chapter are provided here and are referred to in subsequent experimental chapters.

2.1. Fish origin and general maintenance

Juvenile angelfish were obtained from J&K Aquatics (Taunton, UK). When received, fish were held individually for the duration of the experiment in 12 L plastic tanks, each filled with dechlorinated water, an air supply and a plastic tank decoration for cover. Fish were maintained at 24±1°C with a 12h: 12h light: dark cycle and fed on a flake food (TetraMin) diet. Complete water changes were performed at least once per week in order to maintain good water quality.

2.2. Parasite origin and general maintenance

*Spironucleus vortens* trophozoites were maintained in Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium by a modified method employed by Millet et al. (2010), without bile supplementation. Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium contained per 900 ml distilled H₂O: 20 g pancreatic digest of casein (Oxoid); 10 g yeast extract (Oxoid); 10 g glucose (Acros Organics); 2 g NaCl (Fisher Scientific); 2 g L-cysteine HCl (Sigma-Aldrich); 0.2 g ascorbic acid (Sigma-Aldrich); 1 g K₂HPO₄ (Fisher Scientific); 0.6 g KH₂PO₄ (Fisher Scientific) and 22.8 mg ferric ammonium citrate (Sigma-Aldrich). On dissolving these constituents, the pH of the medium was adjusted to 6.8 using NaOH (Fisher Scientific) and autoclaved, before adding 100 ml sterile, heat-inactivated new-born calf serum (Gibco). Trophozoites were routinely subcultured aseptically after 48 h incubation, by transferring 500 µl of a homogenous log-phase culture into 10 ml of culture medium, leaving a 5 ml head space in 15 ml screw capped Falcon tubes (Greiner Bio-one). When accurate cell counts were necessary, trophozoites were fixed using 1.5% (v/v) formaldehyde and counted using an Improved Neubauer haemocytometer (Weber Scientific International). To ensure axenic maintenance, cultures were regularly checked for microbial contamination by plating-out 100 µl of a log-phase culture on nutrient agar and incubating under the above conditions for 5 d.
2.3. **Automated optical cell density monitoring**

A Bioscreen C optical density reader (Labsystems, Finland) was employed to monitor the growth of *S. vortens* trophozoites in 100 well honeycomb plates (Thermo-Fisher), according to Millet et al. (2011). Each well of the honeycomb plate contained 290 µl Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium, 10 µl log-phase cell suspension, at a final density of $10^4$ cells/ well, and 3 µl of the required inhibitor or supplement concentration (as specified in the appropriate chapters). Positive (cells with no inhibitors), negative (no cells or inhibitors) and, if applicable, solvent (cells with 3 µl DMSO, Sigma-Aldrich) controls were also prepared. All treatments were performed in triplicate. Optical density (OD) values were recorded every 15 min on a vertical light path using a wideband filter (420-580 nm) at 24°C, with plates shaken at low amplitude for 10 s before each reading to ensure mixing of well contents. Logarithmic growth rates ($\mu$) and final growth yields were calculated as follows from the resulting growth curves:

$$\mu = \frac{(OD_{t2}-OD_{t1})}{(t_2-t_1)}$$

**Final yield** = $OD_{t_f}$ - $OD_{t_0}$

Where, $OD_{t_1}$ is the optical density at the beginning of log phase growth, $OD_{t_2}$ is the optical density at the end of log phase growth, $OD_{t_0}$ is the initial optical density at the beginning of the growth curve and $OD_{t_f}$ is the final optical density after entering the stationary phase.

2.4. **Determination of protein content**

The protein content of cell-free *S. vortens* extracts were quantified using the Bradford assay (Bradford 1976). A sample volume of 3 µl was added to 1 ml dH$_2$O and a 1/5 dilution of Bradford reagent (Bio-Rad) and the OD measured at 595 nm. A calibration curve was constructed using this method for a range of protein (BSA) concentrations, as demonstrated in Figure 2.1, and used to estimate the protein content of samples for subsequent assays.
2.5. References


---

**Fig. 2.1.** Bradford assay calibration curve. Calibration curve used to determine protein concentration consisting of a fitted line plot constructed in Minitab (Version 16) of BSA concentration against optical density (OD) at 595 nm using the Bradford assay.
Chapter 3

Non-invasive estimation of *Spironucleus vortens* in angelfish provides novel insights on the transmission of this diplomonad parasite.
CHAPTER 3:

Non-invasive estimation of *Spironucleus vortens* in angelfish provides novel insights on the transmission of this diplomonad parasite

Williams CF, Vacca AR, Lloyd D, Schelkle B & Cable J

*Manuscript in press with Diseases of Aquatic Organisms*

DOI: 10.3354/dao02618

3.1. ABSTRACT

*Spironucleus vortens* is a protozoan fish parasite of veterinary and economic importance in the ornamental aquaculture industry. Despite this, key aspects of the life cycle of this organism, including its mode of transmission, have not been fully elucidated. The current study developed a non-invasive method for quantifying *S. vortens* in angelfish, which was then used to investigate parasite transmission and aggregation within host populations. As previously observed for *S. meleagridis* and *S. salmonis*, motile *S. vortens* trophozoites were detected in host faeces using light microscopy. Species-level identification of these flagellates was confirmed using 16S rDNA PCR. Faecal trophozoite counts were significantly correlated with trophozoite counts from the posterior intestine, the primary habitat of the parasite. This novel finding allowed effective prediction of intestinal parasite load from faecal counts. Overall, faecal count data revealed 20% of hosts harbour 83% of parasites, conforming to the Pareto Principle (80/20 rule) of parasite aggregation with implications for parasite transmission. Trophozoites survived for ≥36 d outside the host within faecal pellets and remained motile at low pH (comparable to that of angelfish stomach). No putative *S. vortens* cysts were observed in cultures or faecal samples. This calls into question the commonly accepted hypothesis that a protective encysted stage is required in the life cycle of *S. vortens* to facilitate transmission to a new host.

3.2. INTRODUCTION

Ornamental aquaculture is a global multi-million dollar industry, which has been growing at an annual rate of 14% since 1985 (FAO 2005). Disease is a major limiting
factor in aquaculture production, causing losses of 45% to the industry (FDA 2012). Unfavourable conditions such as overcrowding, low dissolved O\textsubscript{2} tensions and aggression due to competition for resources, leads to animal stress which increases fish susceptibility to diseases. Accurate diagnosis of many fish diseases requires sophisticated equipment, such as electron microscopy, and consultation with fish health experts for pathogen identification (Sterud & Poynton 2002; Noga 2010). A further complication is the lack of available data into basic aspects of pathogen biology, including the life cycle and transmission of some disease-causing agents. Hence, infections are often undiagnosed, and may lead to disease outbreaks and significant mortality of fish if control measures fail.

Diplomonads are a group of aerotolerant anaerobic or microaerophilic organisms which inhabit low O\textsubscript{2} environments such as the intestinal tract of animals and lake sediments (Biagini et al. 1998; Lloyd et al. 2002; Kolisko et al. 2010; Williams et al. 2011). \textit{Spironucleus vortens} is a diplomonad parasite of freshwater ornamental fish. First isolated from an angelfish in Florida in 1991 (Poynton et al. 1995), \textit{S. vortens} is particularly prevalent in cichlids and cyprinids, including angelfish, \textit{Pterophyllum scalare}, and discus, \textit{Symphysodon discus} (see review by Williams et al. 2011). The primary habitat of this parasite is the middle to posterior intestinal tract; however, motile trophozoites have also been isolated from other organs, including the liver, spleen and kidneys of infected hosts, indicating systemic infection. Recovery of this organism from head lesions has led to this parasite being described as the putative causative agent of hole-in-the-head disease (Paull & Matthews 2001).

Studies into the biology of \textit{Spironucleus} spp. have been greatly hampered by lack of appropriate experimental methods. Earlier studies, which relied on the use of light microscopy alone to identify diplomonads, resulted in the assignation of piscine diplomonads to the genera \textit{Hexamita}, \textit{Octomitus} and \textit{Spironucleus}. Recent detailed ultrastructural work and molecular tools, however, have confirmed that all piscine diplomonads belong to the genus \textit{Spironucleus} (see Poynton & Sterud 2002, Jørgensen & Sterud 2007). PCR and/or sequencing primers have now been designed for most \textit{Spironucleus} spp. (see review by Williams et al. 2011). In the case of \textit{S. vortens}, however, the only available primers indiscriminately amplify the 16S rRNA gene of most \textit{Spironucleus} species. Species-level identification of \textit{S. vortens} therefore requires sequencing of 16S rDNA or transmission electron microscopy.
Chapter 3: Transmission of *Spironucleus vortens*

The life cycle of piscine *Spironucleus* spp. is poorly characterised, with most information being inferred from the distantly related mammalian diplomonad parasite *Giardia* (see review by Ankarklev et al. 2010). Like *Giardia*, the life cycle of *Spironucleus* spp. is thought to be direct, via the faecal-oral route, with transmission between hosts being facilitated by an infective encysted stage (Woo & Poynton 1995). The cyst form has been documented for *S. muris* (host: rodents), *S. meleagridis* (host: birds) and *S. salmonis* (host: salmon, trout), but has only rarely been seen *in vivo* for other piscine *Spironucleus* spp. and in the case of *S. vortens*, has never been documented (Sangmaneedet & Smith 2000; Williams et al. 2011). Likewise, the cyst form has not yet been reported for *S. salmonicida* (host: salmon, trout) but a recent genomic survey identified in this parasite a *Giardia lamblia* cyst wall protein homologue as well as two enzymes involved in cyst wall assembly, glucosamine-6-phosphate isomerase and UDP-N-acetylglucosamine pyrophosphorylase (Andersson et al. 2007). For *S. meleagridis* and *S. salmonis*, live trophozoites are expelled into fresh faeces without encystment (Tojo & Santamarina 1998; Philbey et al. 2002) and transmission of *S. salmonicida* trophozoites via skin lesions has been suggested (Poppe et al. 1992). The fact that *S. vortens*, *S. salmonicida* and *S. meleagridis* trophozoites are associated with extra-intestinal systemic infections, with parasites being identified in a number of different organs (Poppe et al. 1992; Paull & Matthews 2001; Bailey et al. 2010), indicates that trophozoites are able to tolerate fluctuations in O₂ tensions, pH and nutrition. Hence, it may be possible that some *Spironucleus* spp., including *S. vortens*, may not require an encysted stage, with the trophozoite form instead responsible for transmission.

The transmission potential of a pathogen is commonly measured using the basic reproduction rate, R₀. This represents the average number of secondary infections caused by an infected host during its lifetime. An R₀ value of >1 typically marks an epidemic outbreak, whereas if the calculated R₀ value is <1, the outbreak will become extinct (Woolhouse et al. 1997). The reliability of this epidemic threshold value, however, has recently been questioned as it can lead to misleading conclusions regarding the infectivity of the pathogen and lead to inappropriate medical interventions for pathogen control (Breban et al. 2007). For example, R₀ is affected by heterogeneities in pathogen transmission rates between individuals in a given population (Woolhouse et al. 1997). Such variation in pathogen transmission can be partially explained by the Pareto Principle, a statistical pattern known as the 80/20 rule, as proposed by Woolhouse et al. (1997). Host-parasite systems commonly abide to the 80/20 rule, whereby 20% of hosts
harbour ca. 80% of the parasites and hence transmission potential of the population. For endoparasites, such as *S. vortens*, current methods of determining parasite burden involve euthanasia of fish to examine intestinal contents (Whaley & Francis-Floyd 1991; Sangmaneedet 1999; Jørgensen & Sterud 2004).

In the current study, a non-invasive method of parasite quantification, based on a previous study by Tojo and Santamarina (1998), was developed using *S. vortens* faecal counts to estimate the degree of intestinal colonization. Species-level identification of *S. vortens* was confirmed using novel 16S rDNA PCR primers. To address the important issue of *S. vortens* aggregation within a host population, the parasite quantification method was successfully applied to test the 80/20 rule. Leading on from this, the role of the trophozoite in parasite transmission was examined using further faecal analysis (trophozoite survival), *in vitro* experiments (trophozoite tolerance to low pH) and an antibody-based technique (in the search for putative *S. vortens* cysts). Overall, the study aimed to provide novel information on the life cycle of *S. vortens*, specifically its mode of transmission to a new host.

### 3.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### 3.3.1. Fish origin and general maintenance

Juvenile angelfish (*Pterophyllum scalare*, N=168) were obtained from J&K Aquatics (Taunton, UK) and maintained as described in Chapter 2, section 2.1. All the experiments described below were conducted under these conditions.

#### 3.3.2. Parasite origins

*Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC 50386). Trophozoite cultures were maintained in Keister's modified TYI-S-33 medium as described in Chapter 2, section 2.2.

*Spironucleus vortens* *Sv1*. An English-bred infected angelfish (identified by the presence of *Spironucleus* trophozoites in faeces, August 2011) was euthanized by overdose of MS-222 (Sigma-Aldrich). The entire intestinal tract was removed and transferred to 10 ml Keister’s modified culture medium containing 0.5 mg/ml penicillin and streptomycin, 5 mg/ml gentamycin and 1 mg/ml colistin sulphate (all from Sigma-Aldrich), and incubated for 72 h at 24°C. The organism was then sub-cultured 5 times as described above to allow an increase in trophozoite number and remove bacterial/fungal contamination. Finally, a ciliate contaminant was removed at room temperature (20°C) by low speed centrifugation at 112 *g* for 3 min. The resulting pellet, containing the axenic
Chapter 3: Transmission of *Spironucleus vortens*

*Spironucleus* isolate, was aseptically transferred to fresh culture medium and maintained as described above, without antibiotics. Freezer stocks of the new isolate were prepared after a total of 6 subcultures by suspending ca. 10⁶ cells/ml in 10% DMSO (v/v, Sigma-Aldrich) and cooling to -80°C in an isopropanol bath at a controlled rate of 1°C per min. Vials of frozen cultures were then transferred to liquid N₂ for long term storage. Molecular identification of this new *Spironucleus* isolate (herein *Sv1*) was confirmed by PCR (see below).

*Spironucleus barkhanus* (ATCC 50467). Trophozoites from a liquid N₂ culture were thawed and incubated overnight in Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 culture medium supplemented with 1 mg/L bile (sourced from local slaughter house) at 20°C, according to Sterud (1998).

3.3.3. Species-level identification of *S. vortens* using 16S rDNA PCR

A new primer pair, SV-1f 5'-TGTGGGAGACTGTGCTCTTG-3’ and SV-1r: 5'-AGCATACTCCCCAGGAACT-3’, was designed to specifically amplify 158 bp of the 16S rRNA gene of *S. vortens* beginning at positions 704 (SV-1f) and 842 (SV-1r) of the GenBank Accession Number U93085 *S. vortens* gene sequence (Keeling & Doolittle 1997). These primers were designed using Primer3 (Rozen & Skaletsky 2000) and their suitability for PCR confirmed using OligoAnalyzer version 3.1 ( PrimerQuest®). The Spiro-1f/1r primer pair from Jørgensen & Sterud (2004), which amplifies the 16S rRNA gene of most *Spironucleus* and *Hexamita* species, was employed as a positive control, producing an amplicon of 1431 bp. Total DNA was extracted from the *Sv1* intestinal isolate, *S. vortens* ATCC strain (positive control), *S. barkhanus* ATCC strain (negative control) and dH₂O (negative control) using the DNeasy Blood and Tissue Kit (Qiagen). Each 10 µl PCR reaction consisted of 2 µl of extracted DNA, 1 µl of each primer (10 pmol/µl, Eurofins), 0.1 µl dNTPs (0.25 mM, Thermo Scientific), 0.6 µl MgCl₂ (1.5 mM, Thermo Scientific), 1 µl of PCR buffer (ABgene), 0.1 µl of Taq Polymerase (0.05 U/µl, Thermo Scientific) and 4.2 µl of dH₂O. The PCR cycle was as follows: 95°C for 5 min, 95°C for 45 s, 56°C for 1 min, 72°C for 2 min, 72°C for 4 min and finally held at 4°C in a 96 well thermal cycler (Applied Biosystems). The denaturing, annealing and elongation steps were repeated for 35 cycles. Gel electrophoresis of the PCR products (2 µl each plus 1 µl loading dye, Applied Biosystems) and 100 kb DNA ladder was performed on 1.5% (w/v) agarose gels (Bioline) containing ethidium bromide (Invitrogen) with an
applied voltage of 120 V. Gels were then visualized and imaged using an UV transilluminator (GelDoc-It).

### 3.3.4. Detection and quantification of *S. vortens* trophozoites in angelfish faeces by light microscopy

Fresh faecal samples from angelfish were collected from the bottom of clean plastic tanks using a plastic pipette. Faecal samples were placed on a glass slide with a drop of fresh dechlorinated water and compressed using a 22 x 22 mm coverslip. These squash preparations were examined by light microscopy for the presence of *S. vortens* trophozoites, which were identified according to their length (10-20 µm), pyriform shape and characteristic torpedo-like cell motility. The number of trophozoites per sample was estimated by counting the number of parasites present for a 15 min period (X400 magnification) until the whole sample had been examined (ca. 50 fields of view). The PCR method described above, using the SV-1f/1r primer pair, was employed in order to confirm the presence of *S. vortens* in the faeces of angelfish. A total of 17 angelfish faecal samples, from fish with varying degrees of *Spironucleus* infection (as previously determined by faecal counts, see below), were analysed in order to test the sensitivity of the method for non-invasive *in vivo* diagnosis. Tank water (1 ml) from a highly infected and uninfected fish was also tested for the presence of *S. vortens*, with fresh dechlorinated water used as an additional negative control.

### 3.3.5. Comparison of infection prevalence and intensity via faecal and intestinal trophozoite counts

Two faecal samples (in order to account for variation in parasite shedding by the host over time) were collected from 20 fish for non-invasive quantification of the number of *S. vortens* trophozoites. Later the same day, the fish were euthanized with an overdose of MS-222 anaesthetic and dissected. The entire intestinal tract was removed and cut into four sections: anterior, anterior-middle, middle-posterior and posterior (according to Uldal & Buchmann 1996), and the total number of *S. vortens* trophozoites in each section quantified as for the faecal samples (squash preparation of intestinal sections under X400 magnification). Trophozoite counts derived from angelfish faeces and the four angelfish intestinal sections were first incorporated into a generalized linear mixed model (GLMM) to account for the repeated faecal sampling of one individual. Since animal ID and faecal sample number did not have a significant effect on the faecal trophozoite count, the
average of the two faecal samples were used as dependent variables in a negative binomial general linear model (GLM) with intestinal trophozoite counts in the four different gut locations as independent variables. Models were reduced using a step-wise deletion process with an α-level of 0.05 and evaluation of AIC values to assess significance of model terms and overall model fit. The only independent variable which significantly correlated with faecal counts was the posterior intestine. Hence, the final model utilized log_{10} transformed faecal (dependent variable) and posterior intestinal (independent variable) count data and the square root link function. The model assumptions were checked for normal distribution (visual examination of histograms and Q-Q plots), heteroscedasticity (Fligner-Killeen test, p<0.05), overdispersion (\theta \approx 1) and proportion of variability in the dataset that is accounted for by the model (pseudo $R^2 \geq 0.7$). The final model was then used to predict the number of trophozoites in the posterior gut based on parasite counts in faeces.

3.3.6. Pareto Principle (80/20 rule)

The *S. vortens* trophozoite faecal quantification method described above was used to test the Pareto Principle that ca. 80% of the effects come from 20% of the causes. Hosts (N=168, including uninfected individuals) were ranked from most to least infected according to trophozoite faecal counts and the relative proportions of host (0-1, with 0.05 increments) plotted against the corresponding proportions of parasites. The expected proportion of parasites, or transmission potential, was extrapolated from the top 20% of most infected individuals.

3.3.7. Survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites in faeces

Fresh faecal samples were collected from angelfish, transferred into 1 L plastic pots and incubated at 24°C for specific time intervals (0, 1, 2, 3, 14 or 36 days) in dechlorinated water (N=28 faecal samples per time point). After incubation, samples were examined and the number of *S. vortens* trophozoites counted as described above.

3.3.8. Survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites at varying pH *in vitro*

Log-phase *S. vortens* trophozoites from *in vitro* cultures (ATCC and *Sv1* strains) were inoculated into the wells of a 12-well plate to a final cell density of 2-3 x 10^6 cells/well (counted by fixation of a 10 µl sample from a homogenous cell suspension in 1.5% (v/v) formaldehyde using an Improved Neubauer haemocytometer prior to well
inoculation). Each well contained 2 ml of culture medium at different pH levels: pH 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 or 2 ml of distilled water (2 replicates of each pH per parasite strain). Trophozoite motility was used to monitor cell vigour using light microscopy (X200 magnification). Cells were incubated on a shaker between observations (50 rpm) to mimic the motions of stomach peristalsis and observed every hour for 3 h. Cell motility was ranked as follows: (-) immotile cells, (+) twitching cells (++), semi-motile/slow-moving cells, and (+++) cells with normal/healthy motility.

### 3.3.9. Putative S. vortens cysts

**Encystment of S. vortens in vitro.** To investigate whether *S. vortens* encystment could be induced, several methods were tested that are based on successful encystment protocols for related diplomonads, such as *Giardia* and other *Spironucleus* spp. These were as follows; (1) starvation: post-stationary phase cultures (i.e. >72 h) incubated in PBS (pH 7.2) or distilled water (Uldal 1996); (2) *Giardia* encystment medium: *S. vortens* trophozoites were grown to late log phase in culture medium, before being transferred to encystation medium, consisting of culture medium supplemented with 1 M NaOH (Sigma-Aldrich), 0.25 mg/ml bile (obtained from local slaughter house) and 5 mM lactic acid (Sigma-Aldrich, Gillin et al. 1989); (3) bile salts: taurocholic acid and glycocholic acid (both from Sigma-Aldrich) in culture medium (1, 2, 4, 8, and 16 mM); (4) fatty acids: oleic acid and myristic acid (both from Sigma-Aldrich), in culture medium (2, 1, 0.5, 0.25 and 0.125 mM). Approximately $10^6$ *S. vortens* trophozoites were incubated with all treatments for 72 h in 12 well plates and examined by light microscopy every 24 h for the presence of putative cysts using the trypan blue (0.4% w/v, Sigma-Aldrich) exclusion assay to identify viable cells.

**Morphological identification of putative S. vortens cysts in vivo.** There are currently no commercially available cyst-specific stains for the identification of *Spironucleus*. Januschka et al. (1988), however, showed that the cysts of *S. muris* and *Giardia microti* have similar cyst wall protein compositions. Therefore, the GiardiaCel kit (Cellabs) was used to examine angelfish faecal samples for the presence of *Spironucleus* cysts. A total of 10 fresh and 10 two week old faecal samples (the latter incubated in aquarium water in closed Eppendorfs) were collected from angelfish and fixed, permeabilized and stained according to the manufacturer’s instructions. The kit contained a *Giardia*-specific cyst wall primary antibody, which binds to CWP1, a protein component of the *Giardia* cyst wall (Chatterjee et al. 2010). A fluorescent FTIC-tagged
anti-mouse secondary antibody was used to visualize the cyst ($\lambda_{ex}$ 490 nm, $\lambda_{em}$ 530 nm). Cells were imaged at X200 and X600 magnification using confocal microscopy (Leica TCS SP2 AOBS). A Giardia-positive slide, supplied by the kit, was used as a positive control. *S. vortens* trophozoites (ATCC strain) from 5 day and 2 week old *in vitro* cultures were also examined in the same way.

3.3.10. Statistical analysis

All statistical analyses described above were conducted using R (version 2.15.1; R Core Team 2012). Mean abundance was used to compare faecal and intestinal trophozoite counts and is defined as the mean number of parasites counted per sample with zero counts included.

3.4. RESULTS

Quantification of *Spironucleus vortens* trophozoites present in angelfish faeces allowed accurate estimation of the degree of intestinal colonization by the parasite. Trophozoites survived for extended periods in angelfish faeces and remained motile at acidic pH. No *S. vortens* cysts were observed *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

3.4.1. Identification of *S. vortens* trophozoites in fresh angelfish faeces

The SV-1f/1r primer pair specifically distinguished *S. vortens* from *S. barkhanus* (Fig. 3.1a) and confirmed the presence of *S. vortens* in angelfish faecal samples (Fig. 3.1b). The smaller DNA fragment generated from the new primer pair was easy to amplify, and therefore the test more sensitive, than the previously documented Spiro-1f/1r primer pair (see Jørgensen & Sterud 2004; data not shown), which only identifies *Spironucleus* to the genus level. Single celled, pyriform-shaped, highly motile flagellates with torpedo-like motion were observed at X400 magnification towards the centre of angelfish faeces using light microscopy (Fig. 3.2). These organisms were ca. 10-20 µm in length, abundant and were found freely swimming amongst the faecal matter. Numerous intracellular inclusions, putative vacuoles and/or bacteria, were observed within these organisms, which have been characteristically observed in *Spironulceus* trophozoites (Poynton & Sterud 2002). These cytoplasmic inclusions are less numerous in laboratory cultured isolates. The mean abundance of *S. vortens* trophozoites in faecal samples of all fish employed in this study (N=168) was 68, with a range of 1-1,322. In some instances, differences were observed in the sensitivity of the molecular and microscopic approaches.
employed to identify *S. vortens* trophozoites. This is illustrated in Figure 3.1b (see †) whereby no *S. vortens* DNA amplification was apparent in faecal samples of fish previously deemed to be highly infected with *S. vortens* (>100 trophozoites counted) by the microscopic method. It should be noted, however, that not enough replicates were performed in order to directly compare the accuracy of the microscopic and molecular methods.

### 3.4.2. Correlation between faecal and intestinal trophozoite counts

The variation between faecal counts taken from the same fish over time is illustrated in Figure 3.3. The largest difference between two faecal samples from the same host was 685 trophozoites, a range of 135-820 parasites counted. The prevalence of infection in the intestinal tract of angelfish (N=20) was 100%, with a mean abundance of 3,096, approx. 37x greater than that of faecal samples, with a range of 1-18,430 in the posterior section (the intestinal section which consistently had the highest parasite load). There was a significant positive correlation between average faecal trophozoite counts and posterior intestinal trophozoite counts (negative binomial GLM, Z = 3.979, p<0.001, AIC = 44.60, pseudo $R^2 = 0.7$; Fig.3.4). Although individual faecal counts, i.e. count 1 or count 2, when incorporated individually into the model, also significantly correlated with posterior intestinal counts, the overall fit of both these models was reduced with regards to proportion of variability in the dataset that was accounted for by the models (pseudo $R^2$ = 0.58 and 0.50 for count 1 and count 2, respectively). Hence, obtaining the average of at least 2 faecal counts greatly increases reliability when predicting posterior intestinal trophozoite numbers.

### 3.4.3. Aggregation of *S. vortens* infection in angelfish

Figure 3.5 shows that 20% of angelfish hosts harbour approximately 83% of parasites, and thus transmission potential of the population. Of the total host population, 85% harboured 100% of the parasites.
Chapter 3: Transmission of *Spironucleus vortens*

(a) 100 kb DNA ladder  
Sv-1  
Sv ATCC 50386  
S. barkeri  
Sv-1  
Sv ATCC 50386  
NC  
100 kb DNA ladder

(b) Spiro-1f/1r  
SV-1f/1r

[Diagram showing DNA ladder with markers for 100 kb, 500 kb, 1500 kb, and 100 kb.]
Fig. 3.1. Amplified *Spironucleus* DNA banding after 16S rDNA PCR. (a) The Spiro-1f/1r primer pair identified *Spironucleus vortens* ATCC and new intestinal isolate *Sv1* cultures to the genus level (1431 bp fragment), whilst the novel SV-1f/1r primer pair allowed species-specific identification of *S. vortens* (158 bp fragment), indicated by lack of amplified DNA for *S. barkhanus* using this primer pair. NC = dH₂O negative controls, * = empty well. (b) Amplification of *S. vortens* DNA from angelfish faecal samples using the SV-1f/1r primer pair. (-) zero, (+) ≤ 50, (++) 51-100 and (+++) >100 trophozoites counted in previous faecal samples obtained from each fish, † indicates discrepancies between the PCR and microscopic counting method. NC = negative controls: (1) = fresh tank water, (2) tank water from a highly infected fish, (3) tank water from an uninfected fish and (4) dH₂O. PC = positive controls: (5) *S. vortens* *Sv1* strain and (6) *S. vortens* ATCC strain.

Fig. 3.2. *Spironucleus* trophozoites in angelfish faeces. Trophozoites were numerous (ca. 70) and highly motile. Note the characteristic length (ca. 10-20 µm) and pyriform shape of parasites, indicated by arrows (X400 magnification, 1 eye piece unit = 2.5 µm).
3.4.4. Survival of \textit{S. vortens} trophozoites in faeces and varying pH

\textit{S. vortens} trophozoites survived in the faeces of angelfish for a minimum of 36 days (the final time point examined during this experiment). Between 1-16 \textit{S. vortens} trophozoites were observed in the 36 d old faecal samples, with a mean abundance of 2. This was a decline of 90\% compared to the Day 0 samples (mean abundance 19.2, range 1-130). \textit{S. vortens} trophozoites (both the \textit{Sv1} and ATCC strains) survived for a minimum of 3 h in culture medium at pH 5 and 7 indicated by motility of the organisms. Parasite motility in \textit{dH}_2\text{O} and at pH 6 was reduced to twitching (ATCC strain) or no motility (\textit{Sv1} strain) after 3 h incubation in these conditions. Motility of the \textit{Sv1} new intestinal isolate also diminished greatly following 3 h incubation in pH 5 and 7 culture media. However, for cells incubated in culture medium at pH \leq 4 cell motility immediately ceased for both strains and trophozoites became irregular in morphology, eventually resulting in lysis of cells (Table 3.1).

\textbf{Table 3.1.} \textit{Spironucleus vortens} survival under acidic pH. Survival of \textit{S. vortens} (ATCC and \textit{Sv1}) trophozoites over time in culture medium of varying pH and distilled water, indicated by (+++) healthy motility, (++) semi-motile, (+) twitching motility and (-) immotile cells. Cells were shaken between each observation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>pH 4</th>
<th>pH 5</th>
<th>pH 6</th>
<th>pH 7</th>
<th>\textit{dH}_2\textit{O}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>\textit{S. vortens ATCC strain}</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>\textit{S. vortens Sv1 strain}</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4.5. Attempted induction and identification of *S. vortens* cysts

No viable cyst-like structures were observed after incubation in any of the cyst-induction media tested. After incubation, there was a marked increase in lysed cell debris (i.e. aggregations of organelles) and trypan blue was taken up by all remaining intact cellular structures, indicating dead or dying cells. Figure 3.6a shows the characteristic staining of the *Giardia* cyst wall, which was used as a positive control in the search for putative *S. vortens* cysts. Of all the angelfish faecal samples examined, no *Spironucleus* cyst-like structures were identified. There was a high degree of cross-reactivity of the *Giardia* cyst wall antibody with other matter found within the faecal samples, but no stained structures were observed that were similar in morphology to *Giardia* and *S. muris* cysts (see Januschka et al. 1988). Interestingly, however, *S. vortens* trophozoites from 5 day old and 2 week old cultures were positively labelled with this antibody (Fig. 3.6b-d). Unlike the *Giardia* cysts, intact trophozoites were labelled only around the periphery of the cell.

![Figure 3.3](image)

**Fig. 3.3.** Scatterplot of variability in the total number of *Spironucleus* trophozoites observed between faecal samples (n≥2) over time for each fish (29 in total).
3.5. DISCUSSION

The characteristic rapid, torpedo-like motility of *Spironucleus vortens*, as well as its pyriform shape and typical length of ca. 10-20 µm, allowed easy identification of *S. vortens* from squash preparations of angelfish intestinal sections and faecal pellets during this study. The presence of parasites in samples was confirmed using novel SV-1f/1r primers, which provided species level identification of *S. vortens*. Intestinal dissections revealed that all fish examined (N=20) were infected with *S. vortens*. Intensity of infection was greatest in the posterior intestine, which is comparable with previous observations by Poynton et al. (1995) and Sangmaneedet (1999).

As a non-invasive method of quantifying infection, faecal trophozoite counts were used as a tool to predict the degree of intestinal colonization by *S. vortens*. Faecal trophozoite counts have been used previously by Tojo and Santamarina (1998) as a means of estimating *S. salmonis* infections in salmonids. This study confirms the feasibility of employing faecal trophozoite counts to estimate the degree of intestinal colonization. Faecal counts correlated significantly with trophozoite counts observed in the posterior intestine of angelfish. Hence, the prediction curve (see Fig. 3.4) developed during this study may be used as a reliable means of estimating intestinal infection by *S. vortens* in angelfish. It is important to note, however, that the mean abundance of posterior intestinal trophozoite counts was 37x greater than the faecal trophozoite counts. Hence, care must be taken whilst interpreting faecal samples where no trophozoites are detected for both the microscopic and molecular identification methods as this may be due to human counting error, reduced parasite motility in the sample, or differential parasite shedding by the host over time. The latter is true of *Giardia*, where there is a periodicity in cyst excretion by the host (McGlade et al. 2003). It is therefore recommended that a minimum of two faecal samples are analysed from the same fish in order to estimate intestinal colonization.

The disease dynamics of *S. vortens* were investigated in terms of parasite aggregation in hosts using data from faecal trophozoite counts. In the current study, angelfish-*S. vortens* aggregation matched the 80/20 rule with 20% of the hosts harbouring 83% of parasites. These highly infected hosts, termed “supershedders”, account for the bulk of the transmission potential (Lloyd-Smith et al. 2005). Woolhouse et al. (1997) observed a similar aggregation pattern for the protozoan parasites *Leishmania* and *Plasmodium*. The same authors suggested that control measures should focus on this 20% core of highly infected individuals. Hence, the non-invasive trophozoite quantification
method developed during this study may be applied in aquaculture to identify and treat the top 20% of infected individuals in order to efficiently control disease outbreaks. This would be especially useful for broodstock or other highly prized angelfish and discus.

**Fig. 3.4.** Correlation between faecal and posterior intestinal trophozoite counts. A scatterplot of log_{10} transformed faecal trophozoite count vs. posterior intestinal trophozoite count. The continuous line represents predicted values of posterior counts for a given faecal count, derived from a negative binomial general linear model (Z = 3.979, p<0.001, theta = 0.308 and pseudo R^2 = 0.7). This prediction curve was overlaid on top of a scatterplot of the actual count data. Dashed lines represent upper and lower standard errors of the model.
A small proportion of expelled *S. vortens* trophozoites (ca. 10% of the number recovered from fresh faecal samples) survived for 36 days in angelfish faeces. This is the first observation of prolonged survival of diplomonad trophozoites in host faeces and suggests that *S. vortens* trophozoites are able to utilize substrates present in the faeces and withstand fluctuations in nutrients, temperature and O$_2$ tensions for long-term survival. Millet et al. (2010) found that *S. vortens* consumes O$_2$ at a rate of 62 nmol/min/10$^7$ cells in a closed reaction vessel, suggesting a highly effective O$_2$ scavenging mechanism. *S. vortens* and *S. salmonis* are only capable of surviving in water for a limited time (10 h and 5 min, respectively, Kent et al. 1992; Millet et al. 2011) a finding which was confirmed during the current study whereby *S. vortens* trophozoite motility was dramatically reduced after 3 h. Hence, faecal matter is likely to confer a substantial degree of protection for the trophozoite against the external environment. For example, the presence of O$_2$ consuming gut bacteria and saprophytic organisms will result in the removal of O$_2$ from faecal pellets generating a microaerobic habitat. Indeed, trophozoites were mainly found towards the centre of faecal samples where O$_2$ tensions would be at their lowest (pers. obs.). *S. salmonis* trophozoites have also been observed in the faeces of salmonids (Tojo & Santamarina 1998). The fact that *S. vortens* and *S. salmonis* cluster together in 16S rDNA phylogenies suggests that they are closely related, and may explain the similarities observed in trophozoite faecal shedding (Fard et al. 2007). Trophozoites of the marine parasites *S. salmonicida* and *S. barkhanus* have not yet been described in faecal pellets. If confirmed, a possible explanation for this could be due to the high salt composition of the surrounding marine environment, hence requiring a cyst form for survival outside the host.

As *S. vortens* trophozoites can survive for extended periods in angelfish faeces they potentially represent a transmission stage to new hosts, but if ingested they would have to withstand the acidic pH of the stomach. *S. vortens* trophozoites generally remained motile at pH 5-7, but motility instantly ceased at pH ≤4, eventually resulting in cell lysis. The stomach pH of freshwater angelfish has not been well characterised, however that of *Holacanthurus passers*, a marine angelfish species, has been reported to range from 2-5 (Martínez-Díaz & Pérez-España 1999). In another cichlid, *Oreochromis niloticus*, stomach pH levels range from 0.9-7 (Getachew 1989), being more acidic after feeding due to the secretion of gastric fluids for digestion. Hence, at the more alkaline end of the scale it may be plausible that *S. vortens* trophozoites can survive passage through the stomach. Indeed, *Spironucleus* trophozoites have previously been
documented in the stomach of hosts, including mice (Fain et al. 2008), Siamese fighting fish (O’Brien et al. 1993) and angelfish (Sangmaneedet 1999), with that of mice being confirmed by molecular identification. As fish are coprophagic, it is highly likely that *S. vortens* trophozoites would be readily consumed and, given the appropriate conditions, may survive passage to the intestine. Indeed, Sangmaneedet (1999) showed that oral infection of angelfish with *S. vortens* trophozoites resulted in intestinal colonization by this parasite.

**Fig. 3.5.** Transmission potential of *Spironucleus vortens* according to the 80/20 rule. Fitted line plot (continuous line) of the proportion of hosts (N=168), ranked from most to least infected with *S. vortens*, against proportion of parasites in order to test the Pareto Principle (or 80/20 rule) of parasite aggregation in a host population. The distribution of a homogeneous population is also indicated. Dashed lines indicate the expected proportion of parasites present in 20% of the hosts.

It has been proposed that cyst-like structures confer long-term survival of *Spironucleus* species outside the host (Woo & Poynton 1995). However, despite various methods being employed during the current study to induce encystment in *S. vortens*, no
viable cyst-like structures were identified. Hence, under the conditions described, neither starvation (in spent culture medium and water) nor putative chemical triggers of encystment, e.g. bile and lactic acid, as documented for encystment of related diplomonads, *S. salmonis* and *G. intestinalis* (see Gillin et al. 1989; Uldal 1996), induced encystment of *S. vortens* in vitro. For some protists, e.g. *Entamoeba histolytica*, it has been notoriously difficult to induce encystment *in vitro*, despite the confirmed presence of cysts *in vivo*. For *E. histolytica*, reactive O₂ species from the host immune system or intestinal microbiota have been suggested as potential triggers of encystation, a stress factor that may not be present to the same degree *in vitro* (Aquilar-Díaz et al. 2010). As *S. vortens* occupies a similar niche to *E. histolytica* (i.e. posterior intestine), this may explain the failure to induce encystment *in vitro*. Hence, during this study angelfish faecal samples were also analysed for the presence of putative *S. vortens* cysts. Due to morphological similarities between the cyst walls of *Giardia muris* and *S. muris* (see Poppe et al. 1992) a cyst wall antibody from *G. intestinalis* was employed to identify *S. vortens* cysts in angelfish faeces. Again, no such structures were identified, either indicating a lack of cysts or non-specificity of the *Giardia* antibody with *S. vortens* cysts. Interestingly however, *S. vortens* trophozoites (ATCC strain) were found to be positively labelled with the antibody. The antibody has been previously shown not to react with *Giardia* trophozoites (WB strain, in culture since 1978, Chatterjee et al. 2010), which suggests that either the cell membrane of *S. vortens* trophozoites shares a similar epitope with the *Giardia* cyst wall, perhaps as a constituent of a protective pellicle, or that these trophozoites were in the process of encysting. Completion of the genome sequence of *S. vortens* will provide further insight into the presence or absence of encystment-specific genes in this organism.

In conclusion, this study sheds light on important aspects of *S. vortens* transmission and calls into question the existence of an encysted stage. This is especially relevant in aquaculture where host density, and therefore transmission potential via the faecal-oral route and/or skin lesions, is high. Prolonged survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites in faecal pellets outside the host is a novel discovery that requires further physiological elucidation in terms of the capacity of the organism to tolerate high fluctuations in O₂ tensions and nutrition status. The non-invasive methods (faecal counts and 16S rDNA PCR) employed in this study require further investigation to determine their applicability in aquaculture for reliable diagnosis of *S. vortens* infection and subsequent control of Spironucleosis.
Fig. 3.6. Staining of diplomonads with the GiardiaCel antibody. (a) Giardia cysts (positive control, X600), (b) 2 week old Spironucleus vortens culture (X200), (c) DIC image of 5 day old S. vortens culture, the arrow indicates an intact trophozoite with visible flagella (X600), and (d) fluorescence FITC image of (c) (X600). The debris at the bottom left hand side of images (c) and (d) is an un-intact (dead) trophozoite from the culture.

3.6. REFERENCES


Chapter 3: Transmission of *Spironucleus vortens*


Chapter 3: Transmission of *Spironucleus vortens*


PrimerQuest® program, IDT, Coralville, USA [Cited 05 March, 2013] URL: http://eu.idtdna.com/pages/scitools


Chapter 3: Transmission of *Spironucleus vortens*


Chapter 4

Synergistic effect of garlic-derived ajoene oil and 5-nitroimidazole, metronidazole, against the ornamental fish parasite

*Spironucleus vortens*
CHAPTER 4: Synergistic effect of garlic-derived ajoene oil and 5-nitroimidazole, metronidazole, against the ornamental fish parasite *Spironucleus vortens*

4.1. ABSTRACT

*Spironucleus vortens* is a protozoan parasite associated with significant mortalities in angelfish and discus. Control of this parasite is especially problematic due to restrictions on the use of the drug of choice, metronidazole (MTZ), on outdoor fish farms. However, garlic (*Allium sativum*), employed for millennia in human and veterinary medicine, is undergoing a revival following experimental validations of its antimicrobial efficiency. Ajoene ((E,Z)-4,5,9-trithiadodeca-1,6,11-triene 9-oxide), is a stable transformation product of allicin, the primary biologically active component of garlic. In the current study, an ajoene oil crude extract had a minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of 40 µg/ml against *S. vortens*. Using GC-MS and NMR spectroscopy, this ajoene extract was found to contain a mixture of the (E) and (Z)-ajoene isomers along with diallyl disulphide (DADS) and diallyl trisulphide (DATS). The only component of the ajoene crude oil found to substantially inhibit *S. vortens* growth by optical density monitoring (Bioscreen C Reader) was (Z)-ajoene (MIC 16 µg/ml). Ajoene oil acted in synergy with metronidazole (MTZ) *in vitro*, reducing the individual MIC of this drug (4 µg/ml) by 16-fold, and that of ajoene oil by 200-fold with a fractional inhibitory concentration (FIC) index of 0.263. This synergistic interaction was confirmed *in vivo*. *S. vortens*-infected angelfish fed for 5 consecutive days with 0.5% (v/w) MTZ combined with 0.05% (v/w) ajoene experienced a significant reduction in faecal trophozoite count, whilst those fed on 0.5% MTZ flakes (half the recommended oral dose) alone did not. This study demonstrates for the first time the synergistic interaction between MTZ and ajoene oil both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Future work should evaluate the potential synergy of ajoene and MTZ against MTZ-resistant bacteria and protists.
4.2. INTRODUCTION

Antibiotic discovery is arguably the greatest medical breakthrough of the Twentieth Century. Overuse of these “wonder drugs” has however led to an exponential incline in antibiotic resistance (>20,000 potential resistance genes documented to date, Liu & Pop 2009), coupled with a decline in development of new antibiotics by the pharmaceutical industry. Furthermore, there is a lack in our understanding of fundamental mechanisms of resistance as a result of this microbial arms race (see review by Davies & Davies 2010). In addition to resistance, some therapeutic agents (e.g. fluoroquinolones) can have serious adverse effects on the patient, whilst others (e.g. nitroimidazoles) have been classified as potential human carcinogens (IARC 1987; Lipsky & Baker 1999). Collectively, these factors have led some authors to warn of the return to the pre-antibiotic era in medicine. As a result, research into alternative herbal remedies, such as garlic, is undergoing a revival.

The antimicrobial properties of garlic (Allium sativum) have been exploited for millennia. Ancient civilizations, from the Egyptians to the Romans reaped the benefits of garlic’s broad-ranging medicinal uses to treat a variety of common ailments such as gastrointestinal disorders, asthma and convulsions (Harris et al. 2001). To date the antifungal, antiprotozoal, antibacterial and antiviral effects of Allium-derived compounds have been extensively documented and validated in vitro (see review by Williams & Lloyd 2012). Despite this, little in the way of pharmacological development of Allium-based drugs has taken place (Martin & Ernst 2003). Of the few clinical trials that have been conducted, those involving allicin (diallyl thiosulphinate), the main biologically active component of the garlic clove, have resulted in poor outcomes for gastrointestinal infections. For example, despite the success of in vitro studies against the gastric pathogen Helicobacter pylori, clinical treatment trials failed to eradicate the infection (Graham et al. 1994; Aydin et al. 1997; Ernst 1999). These negative effects were attributed to the low allicin content of the treatments (McNulty et al. 2001). Indeed, many of the commercially available garlic supplements were found to contain undetectable levels of allicin (Freeman & Kodera 1995). Allicin itself is produced from its precursor alliin by the action of alliinase (Lawson et al. 1991). Alliinase is irreversibly inhibited at gastric pH, hence restricting allicin production in the lower gut (Lawson & Hughes 1992). Some studies have employed encapsulated garlic powders, designed to bypass the stomach, hence allowing the release of allicin in the intestinal tract. However, even
studies employing preparations with high allicin content failed to eradicate *H. pylori* infections (Martin & Ernst 2003).

On decomposition, allicin has been documented to yield hundreds of reaction products, many of which are antimicrobial (Block 2010). Of particular note is ajoene ((E, Z)-4, 5, 9-trithiadodeca-1, 6, 11-triene 9-oxide), which is extracted from allicin under heating or methanolic conditions (Block et al. 1984; Naznin et al. 2008). Ajoene has a comparable antimicrobial activity to that of allicin; however its stability is much greater under exposure to elevated temperature, UV light and long term storage (Naznin et al. 2008). Due to the unstable nature of allicin, it is likely that many of the antimicrobial effects of garlic can be attributed to the many reaction products of this highly reactive garlic component, and not directly to allicin itself. Interestingly, Freeman & Kodera (1995) showed that allicin does not decompose to its usual reaction products of diallyl disulphide (DADS), ajoene and dithiins under gastric (pH 1.2) and intestinal (pH 7.5) simulations. Hence, it is possible that previous clinical trials which employed high concentrations of allicin failed for this reason.

Disease control is a major limiting factor of fish production in aquaculture. Treatments such as malachite green, antibiotics and other drugs have been banned from use on food fish in Europe and North America due their toxicity and carcinogenicity in fish and humans (see reviews by Schelkle et al. 2009; Williams et al. 2011). Hence tonnes of fish are lost annually due to disease outbreaks and ineffective infection control (FAO 2012). This is especially true in the case of Spironucleosis, an intestinal disease caused by the protozoan parasite *Spironucleus*. Several outbreaks of Spironucleosis have been documented on fish farms (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992; Poppe & Mo, 1993; Sterud et al. 1998), with the only known effective treatment being the 5-nitroimidazole, metronidazole (MTZ), which has been banned from use on European and American food fish due to its carcinogenic properties in humans (Commission Regulation No. 613/98 1998; FARAD 2010). MTZ is still available for treatment of ornamental fish in contained aquaria, however this drug has been documented as cytotoxic and genotoxic in fish and requires veterinary prescription, meaning that it should only be used as a last resort (Cavas & Ergene-Gozukara 2005; Khalil et al. 2007).

*Allium*-derived compounds have previously been found to be effective against *Spironucleus vortens*, putative causative agent of hole-in-the-head disease in ornamental fish (Paull & Matthews 2001), *in vitro* (Millet et al. 2011a). A later study by Williams et al. (2012, see Chapter 5) investigated the mode of action of garlic-derived compounds
and MTZ, suggesting that ajoene and MTZ may have a synergistic antiparasitic effect due to their complementary modes of action. Indeed, garlic extracts are commonly used as fish food additives in the ornamental industry due to their role in folk-lore medicine (Millet et al. 2011). As a result, this study aimed to evaluate the combinatorial effect of MTZ with ajoene in vitro and in vivo, using S. vortens-infected angelfish.

4.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS

4.3.1. Fish origin and maintenance

Juvenile angelfish (*Pterophyllum scalare*, N=58) were obtained from J&K Aquatics (Taunton, UK) and maintained as described in Chapter 2, section 2.1. Fish were fed with specially prepared flake food, described below.

4.3.2. Organism and culture

Trophozoites of two *Spironucleus vortens* strains, ATCC 50386 and Sv1 (freshly isolated from juvenile English-bred angelfish, described in Chapter 3), were maintained separately in Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium as described in Chapter 2, section 2.2.

4.3.3. Inhibitors

The garlic-derived allicin (2% v/v), ajoene oil (18% v/v), (Z)-ajoene (98% v/v), (E)-ajoene (98% v/v) and dithiin (un-quantified dithiin-rich fraction) extracts were provided by NEEM Biotech Ltd. All other garlic-derived compounds, allyl alcohol (AA), allyl sulphide (AS), allyl disulphide (AD), diallyl disulphide (DADS), diallyl trisulphide (DATS), methyl disulphide (MD), allyl methyl sulphide (AMS), allyl methyl disulphide (AMD), propyl sulphide (PS) and propyl disulphide (PD) were obtained from Lancaster Synthesis Ltd. The 5-nitroimidazole, metronidazole (MTZ) was sourced in powder form (Sigma-Aldrich).

4.3.4. Gas chromatography mass spectrometry (GC-MS)

In order to assess the impurities present in the ajoene (18% (v/v)) preparation, samples were subjected to GC-MS analysis. GC-MS provides good resolution of volatile sample components, by modification of column temperature. The instrument used was an Agilent 6890 GC with a 5973N MS and a 7683 AS. Sample separation was achieved using an Agilent HP-5MS non-polar column with a 30 m x 0.25 mm internal diameter and a 0.25 µm phase thickness. An on-column injection method was employed with an
injection port temperature of 36°C, and an injection volume of 0.2 µl. The initial oven temperature was 35°C, with an initial ramp of 5°C/min to 240°C, where it was held for 3 min, and a second ramp of 10°C/min to a final temperature of 300°C, held for 2 min. The total run time was 55 min. The MS source temperature was 230°C, with scanning between 35-250 amu (EI+ 70eV). Samples were analysed after a 10 min solvent delay and identified by the MS library software (Agilent ChemStation). A positive peak ID was only confirmed with >90% accuracy (R match) from the library.

4.3.5. Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy

The presence of (E) and/or (Z)-ajoene isomers in the ajoene oil extract was determined by 1H NMR spectroscopy. Ajoene oil was diluted 1:100 in CDCl3 (Sigma-Aldrich) and its 1H NMR spectrum was recorded according to Millet et al. (2011b) using a Bruker Avance DPX400 spectrometer with a 5 mm 1H probe at 400 MHz and 300 K. The acquisition time of spectra was 2.56 s using 90° pulses and a relaxation delay time of 1 s over a spectral width of 11 ppm over 16 scans. CDCl3 solvent was used as an internal lock and chemical shifts are expressed as parts per million (ppm). Compounds were identified by comparison with spectra of standard solutions according to Naznin et al. (2008).

4.3.6. Automated optical cell density monitoring

A Bioscreen C optical density reader (Labsystems, Finland) was employed to monitor the growth of S. vortens as described in Chapter 2, section 2.3. The inhibitory effects of a number of Allium-derived compounds were quantified against S. vortens (ATCC strain) in vitro, these were: allicin, ajoene oil, (E)-ajoene, (Z)-ajoene, AA, AS, AD, DADS, DATS, MD, AMS, AMD, PS, PD and dithiins (concentration range: 100, 50, 25, 12.5, 6, 3 and 1, 0.5 and 0.25 µg/ml and 1:100, 1:200, 1:400, 1:800, 1:1600 for the dithiin-rich extract). MTZ was used as a positive control (concentration range: 160, 80, 40, 20, 10, 5, 2.5, 1, 0.5 and 0.25 µg/ml). Various combinations of ajoene oil and MTZ were also employed using the following concentration ranges: 8, 4, 2, 1, 0.5, 0.25 µg/ml ajoene oil and 4, 2, 1, 0.5 and 0.25 µg/ml MTZ. All concentrations of ajoene oil were combined with one of the MTZ concentrations in turn. The inhibitory effect of MTZ, ajoene oil, AA and DADS was also tested against the freshly isolated S. vortens Sv1 strain, as described above. All compounds were diluted in DMSO apart from allicin and AA which were diluted in sterile distilled water. Each well of the honeycomb plate
Chapter 4: Synergy of ajoene and metronidazole

contained 290 µl Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium, 10 µl log-phase cell suspension, at a final density of 10^4 cells/ well, and 3 µl of the required inhibitor concentration (in the combination experiment, 1.5 µl of each compound was loaded). Positive (cells with no inhibitors), negative (no cells or inhibitors) and solvent (cells with 3 µl DMSO) controls were also prepared. Final growth yields were calculated from the resulting growth curves. These final yields were then plotted against inhibitor concentration in order to determine the MIC of compounds, with MIC defined as the minimum inhibitor concentration(s) to completely inhibit *S. vortens* growth. Finally, the fractional inhibitory concentration (FIC), or the lowest concentration of each ajoene + MTZ combination to completely inhibit growth, was derived for each component, as follows:

$$\text{FIC(component A)} = \frac{\text{MIC}_{(A)1}}{\text{MIC}_{(A)2}}$$

Where MIC_{(A)1} corresponds to the MIC of component A when tested in the most efficient combination of A and B, and MIC_{(A)2} is the MIC of component A when tested alone. An FIC index for each ajoene oil/MTZ combination was calculated to assess the synergistic, additive or antagonistic effects of the various combinations, as follows:

$$\text{FIC Index} = \Sigma \text{FIC } A + \text{FIC } B$$

This study employs guidelines proposed by Odds (2003) to determine synergy, no interaction (indifference) and antagonism between inhibitor concentrations, as follows: synergy = FIC<0.5, indifference = FIC 0.5-4.0 and antagonism = FIC>4.0. Normally distributed FIC indexes of equal variance, derived from the combinatorial effect of ajoene oil and MTZ (N=3 for each combination), were analysed by one-sample T-test using Minitab software (Version 16). Each FIC index was analysed for significant difference from 0.5, the FIC index value which indicates synergistic interaction between inhibitors according to Odds (2003).

4.3.7. Preparation of fish food treatments

All treatments were firstly dissolved in 1 ml ethanol (Fisher Scientific) and then re-suspended in 100 ml dH2O to the desired concentration. Fish flake food (TetraMin, 2 g for each treatment) were soaked in each treatment at the desired concentration overnight
at room temperature. Excess moisture was removed from the flake treatments by freeze drying. The resulting ajoene content of dried flakes was quantified by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC). HPLC analysis was carried out on an Agilent 1100 series HPLC system using an ODS 4.6 x 250mm with ODS guard cartridge. All HPLC solvents were purchased from Rathburn Chemicals (Scotland). Samples were solvated in methanol and eluted with an aqueous acetonitrile mixture using a gradient method as follows: 45% acetonitrile up to 13 min, after which the concentration was increased up to 80% before decreasing again to 45% at 18 min. The flow rate was 1 ml/min with a pressure of 400 bar and detection at 254 nm. The recommended MTZ dose for treatment of Spironucleosis is 10 mg/g fish food (Francis-Floyd & Reed 1994). This concentration is approximately 1000-fold greater than the MIC of this drug in vitro. Hence a higher concentration of ajoene, compared to its in vitro MIC was prepared. Preliminary investigations were conducted to define the concentration of flake-soaked ajoene that was palatable to angelfish. Fish (N=2 for each concentration) were fed with 0, 5, 10 and 50 µl ajoene/g flakes (0, 0.5, 1 and 5% v/w, respectively) over the course of 1 d. The only ajoene concentration which fish readily consumed was the 0.5% preparation. Fish from the 0.5% ajoene flakes preliminary treatment group were then continuously fed on this preparation for 5 d without any behavioural changes (i.e. inappetite or erratic behaviour). Subsequently, the concentration of each treatment employed in the main experiment was as follows: 0.5% ajoene oil, 0.5% (v/w, 5 mg/g) MTZ, 0.05% (0.5 µl/g) ajoene oil and 0.5% MTZ combination. The chosen concentration of MTZ is half the recommended dose in ornamental fish (Francis-Floyd & Reed 1994) in order to assess possible synergistic interactions between lower concentrations of this drug and ajoene oil. Freeze-dried control flakes consisted of 2 ml ethanol in 100 ml dH₂O without inhibitors.

4.3.8. In vivo treatment

Naturally occurring S. vortens infections in angelfish (N=50) were quantified using faecal trophozoite counts (described in Chapter 3). The average trophozoite counts from two faecal samples were quantified in order to gain a more accurate estimation of the degree of infection due to differential host parasite shedding over time. S. vortens infections were quantified in this way at Day 0 (pre-treatment). Fish were then randomly separated into groups and treated as follows: Group 1 (N=10) = control flakes, Group 2 (N=9) = 0.5% ajoene flakes, Group 3 (N=8) = 0.5% MTZ flakes, Group 4 (N=10) = 0.05% ajoene and 0.5% MTZ combination flakes and, as an added control, Group 5
Chapter 4: Synergy of ajoene and metronidazole

(N=10) = 0.0005% (w/v, 5 mg/L) MTZ bath. The concentration of MTZ employed in the bath treatments were as recommended by Tojo & Santamarina (1998) as a positive control. The concentration of ajoene employed was the highest concentration tested that was palatable to fish (as described above). The reduction in sample sizes from N=10 for the ajoene oil and MTZ treatment groups is due to difficulties in obtaining faecal samples from some fish during the experiment. Fish in each group were fed daily with the allocated flake treatment (approx. 3% body weight) for 5 d, with daily 25% water changes of aquaria in order to dilute the levels of accumulated ajoene and MTZ (Whaley & Francis-Floyd 1991). On Day 5 post-flake treatment, 100% water changes took place for all treatment groups and the infection intensity was quantified by trophozoite faecal counts, as described above. For the MTZ bath treatment, pre-treatment trophozoite faecal counts were conducted on Day 0, after which fish were incubated for 1 h in a 1 L plastic pot containing 0.0005% MTZ on Day 1, Day 3 and Day 5. Post-treatment trophozoite faecal counts were conducted on Day 6.

A one-tailed Mann-Whitney non-parametric test was employed to identify potential significant difference between angelfish faecal trophozoite counts before and after treatment (Group 1 = control, Group 2 = ajoene oil, Group 3 = MTZ, Group 4 = ajoene oil + MTZ combination and Group 5 = MTZ bath treatment). The pre-treatment faecal counts were hypothesized to be significantly greater than the post-treatment faecal counts with an α value of 0.05. Efficacy of treatments (E_t) were calculated according to Schelkle et al. (2011) as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{If } L_t < L_0, \text{ then } E_t &= (L_0 - L_t) / L_0 \\
\text{If } L_t \geq L_0, \text{ then } \Delta E_t &= 0
\end{align*}
\]

Where \( L_0 \) = faecal trophozoite count before treatment and \( L_t \) = faecal trophozoite count after treatment.

4.4. RESULTS

Ajoene oil and MTZ had a synergistic effect against *Spironucleus vortens* growth *in vitro* and *in vivo*. The only component of the ajoene oil found to have antiparasitic activity against *S. vortens* was (Z)-ajoene.
4.4.1. Analysis of garlic-derived compounds present in ajoene oil

GC-MS chromatogram revealed a number of garlic-derived components present in the crude ajoene oil extract. These were DADS (14.8 min), 3-vinyl-4H-1,3-dithiin (17.8 min), 2-vinyl-4H-1,2-dithiin (18.7 min) and DATS (21.2min), see Figure 4.1. No ajoene was detected by this method; however a mixture of (E) and (Z)-ajoene isomers were identified in NMR spectra of the ajoene oil (Table 4.1), which account for the 18% ajoene proportion of the crude oil extract.

Table 4.1. $^1$H chemical shifts ($\delta$) of ajoene isomers derived from NMR spectra of ajoene oil crude extract. (E) and (Z)-ajoene spectra were consistent with that described previously by Naznin et al. (2008).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>H atom group</th>
<th>$\delta$ (ppm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(E)-Ajoene</td>
<td>(a) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2$</td>
<td>5.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2-\text{S-}$, m</td>
<td>5.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) $\text{S-S-CH}_2$-, d</td>
<td>3.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) $=\text{CH-S-S-}$, d</td>
<td>6.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) $=\text{CH-CH}_2$-, m</td>
<td>5.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f, g) $\text{CH}_2-\text{SO-CH}_2$-, m</td>
<td>3.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(h) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2\text{-SO-}$, m</td>
<td>5.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2$-</td>
<td>5.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (Z)-Ajoene | (a) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2$- | 5.20 |
| | (b) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2-\text{S-}$, m | 5.20 |
| | (c) $\text{S-S-CH}_2$-, d | 3.38 |
| | (d) $=\text{CH-S-S-}$, d | 6.56 |
| | (e) $=\text{CH-CH}_2$-, m | 5.80 |
| | (f, g) $\text{CH}_2-\text{SO-CH}_2$-, m | 3.50 |
| | (h) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2\text{-SO-}$, m | 5.40 |
| | (i) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH-CH}_2$ | 5.40 |
4.4.2. In vitro inhibitory effect of Allium-derived compounds and MTZ against S. vortens

The MIC and IC$_{50}$ values of Allium-derived compounds against S. vortens (ATCC strain) were as follows: ajoene oil = 40 µg/ml, IC$_{50}$ = 5 µg/ml (Fig 4.2a); (Z)-ajoene = 16 µg/ml, IC$_{50}$ = 10 µg/ml (Fig 4.2b); AA = 10 µg/ml, IC$_{50}$ = 0.33 µg/ml (Fig 4.2c); AMD = 20 µg/ml, IC$_{50}$ = 6 µg/ml (Fig 4.2d); DADS IC$_{50}$ = 7 µg/ml (Fig 4.2e); allicin = 1240 µg/ml, IC$_{50}$ = 880 µg/ml (Fig 4.2f). The MIC and IC$_{50}$ for all other Allium-derived compounds tested ((E)-ajoene, AS, AD, DADS, DATS, MD, AMS, PS, PD and dithiins) were not determined as they were greater than the highest concentration tested (>160 µg/ml or >1:100 dilution of the dithin-rich extract). The MICs of ajoene oil (50 µg/ml), AA (6 µg/ml) and DADS (>160 µg/ml) against the S. vortens Sv1 strain was similar to that of the ATCC strain. Interestingly, however, the MTZ MIC values for the two strains

**Fig. 4.1.** GC-MS chromatogram of sulphonated compounds present in ajoene oil crude extract. (a) diallyl disulphide (DADS), (b) 3-vinyl-4H-1,3-dithiin, (c) 2-vinyl-4H-1,2-dithiin and (d) diallyl trisulphide (DATS).
varied greatly, with the ATCC strain being more susceptible to MTZ (MIC = 4.5 µg/ml, IC₅₀ = 1.6 µg/ml, Fig 4.2g) than the more recently isolated Sv1 strain (MIC undetermined). The IC₅₀ of MTZ against the Sv1 strain was calculated as ~0.5 µg/ml, however none of the concentrations tested (≤160 µg/ml) completely inhibited the growth of this strain, demonstrated in Figure 4.3 by increased lag-phases. Growth curves for both strains are provided in Appendix 1 and 2.

Table 4.2. *In vitro* fractional inhibitory concentrations (FICs) of different combinations of metronidazole (MTZ) and ajoene against *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth. The FIC index, with ± standard deviation (N=3), represents the sum of the MTZ and ajoene FIC values for each combination. IND and SYN indicate indifferent and synergistic interactions, respectively. (*) Asterisks indicate significant difference from 0.5, the threshold value of synergy (T-test, p<0.05 *, p<0.0001 **).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MTZ + Ajoene combination (µg/ml)</th>
<th>FIC MTZ</th>
<th>FIC Ajoene</th>
<th>FIC Index (±SD)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 + 0.1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.204</td>
<td>1.204 (±0.261) IND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 + 0.1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.600 (±0) IND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 + 0.025</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.083</td>
<td>0.333 (±0.101) IND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5 + 0.2</td>
<td>0.125</td>
<td>0.175</td>
<td>0.300 (±0.035) SYN*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25 + 0.2</td>
<td>0.0625</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.263 (±0) SYN**</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.4.3. *In vitro* synergistic activity of ajoene oil and MTZ against *S. vortens* growth

A combination of 0.25 µg/ml MTZ and 0.2 µg/ml ajoene oil had a significant synergistic effect against *S. vortens* growth. This combination had a calculated FIC index of 0.263 (±0 SD), which is significantly lower than Odds’ (2003) threshold value of 0.5 (T-test, p<0.05), indicating considerable synergistic activity between these combinations. The FIC index for all ajoene oil and MTZ combinations tested are summarized in Table 4.2. Growth curves are given in Appendix 1.

### 4.4.4. *In vivo* combinations of ajoene oil and MTZ significantly reduce *S. vortens* infections.

The effects of administration of flakes containing (1) 0.5% ajoene oil, (2) 0.5% MTZ, (3) 0.05% ajoene oil + 0.5% MTZ in combination as well as a 0.0005% MTZ bath
treatment on *S. vortens* faecal counts in angelfish are summarized in Figure 4.4. The only treatments that significantly reduced *S. vortens* faecal counts of angelfish were the flakes containing a combination of ajoene oil (0.05%) and MTZ (0.5%) and the MTZ bath treatment (0.0005%, MW, p<0.05 for both). These treatments had relatively high $E_t$ values of 64.5% and 68.2%, respectively, whilst $E_t$ values for all other treatments was <50% (Table 4.3).

**Table 4.3.** Efficacy of different treatments ($E_t$) in reducing *Spironucleus vortens* faecal counts of infected angelfish. $E_t$ is calculated as follows: (trophozoite faecal count (TFC) after treatment – TFC before treatment) / TFC after treatment. SD = standard deviation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment Group</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>$E_t$ (±SD)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control flakes</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.395 (±0.471)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajoene flakes</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.305 (±0.359)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTZ flakes</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.480 (±0.419)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajoene +MTZ flakes</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.645 (±0.397)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTZ bath</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.682 (±0.388)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4.5. DISCUSSION**

The antimicrobial effect of ajoene, a stable garlic derivative, against *Spironucleus vortens* was evaluated alone and in combination with the 5-nitroimidazole MTZ. The ajoene oil crude extract employed during this study contained 18% ajoene as a mixture of (E) and (Z)-ajoene isomers. Ajoene itself was not detected on the GC-MS chromatogram of the ajoene oil, however a mixture of polysulphides, DADS and DATS, as well as vinyl dithiins, 2-vinyl-4H-1,2-dithiin and 3-vinyl-4H-1,3-dithiin were detected. It is possible that the ajoene component of the oil may have decomposed as a result of conditions employed during the analysis, resulting in some of the polysulphides and/or vinyl dithiins observed. Pure (E/Z)-ajoene isomers, used as a control during the GC-MS analysis, were prepared using DMSO as a solvent, resulting in a large solvent peak which swamped the chromatogram, masking any sulphonated compounds which might have been present (data not shown). However, polysulphides and vinyl dithiins are common by-products in the extraction of ajoene from garlic and are produced under thermal degradation of allicin (Naznin et al. 2008). Hence, it is not certain at this stage whether the polysulphides and
vinyl dithiins observed on the ajoene oil chromatogram were already present in the ajoene oil, or whether they are the result of ajoene degradation.

The ajoene oil crude extract inhibited *S. vortens in vitro* growth with an MIC of 40 µg/ml. This MIC was 10-fold greater than that of MTZ (4 µg/ml), the drug of choice for treatment of *S. vortens* infections, and 2.5-fold less than that documented previously by Millet et al. (2011a, 107 µg/ml). This may be due to differences in ajoene oil extraction methods employed in the previous study, which may have resulted in less of the active component(s) being present, or as a result of prolonged *in vitro* cultivation of the organism which is known to affect parasite virulence (e.g. *Leishmania infantum*, Moreira et al. 2012). In order to assess whether the ajoene component of the crude oil extract was responsible for the observed growth inhibition of *S. vortens*, pure preparations of (E) and (Z)-ajoene as well as the potential polysulphide and dithiin contaminants of the oil: DADS, DATS and a dithiin-rich preparation, were also assayed. The only component of the ajoene oil that was found to have a significant inhibitory effect against *S. vortens in vitro* growth was (Z)-ajoene, MIC = 16 µg/ml. This individual MIC is approximately 2.5-fold less than that of the ajoene oil, which is reflected in the lower ajoene content found in this crude extract (18%). The antimicrobial activity of the (Z)-ajoene isomer has previously been documented to exceed that of the (E)-isomer (see review by Williams & Lloyd 2012). In contrast to previously published data by Millet et al. (2011a) the dithiin-rich preparation tested during this study did not have a quantifiable inhibitory effect against *S. vortens*. This may be due to differences in the extraction process leading to a lower yield of vinyl dithiins and/or polysulphide contaminants present in the current preparation. The MIC of DADS against *S. vortens* was unclear, with trophozoite growth increasing at higher concentrations of the compounds, but an IC$_{50}$ value of 7 µg/ml was derived. A number of other garlic-derives, allyl alcohol, sulphides and polysulphides, previously documented to be degradation products of allicin, as well as allicin itself, were also tested for their inhibitory effects against *S. vortens*. The MIC value for the majority of the compounds examined was greater than the highest concentration tested, however AA and AMD had substantially low MIC values of 10 and 20 µg/ml, respectively. The MIC of AA against *S. vortens* is comparable with that of *Giardia intestinalis* and *Trichomonas vaginalis* (see review by Williams & Lloyd 2012).
Chapter 4: Synergy of ajoene and metronidazole

(a) MIC = 40 µg/ml
IC$_{50}$ = 5 µg/ml

(b) MIC = 16 µg/ml
IC$_{50}$ = 10 µg/ml

(c) MIC = 10 µg/ml
IC$_{50}$ = 0.33 µg/ml

(d) MIC = 20 µg/ml
IC$_{50}$ = 6 µg/ml

(e) MIC = unclear
IC$_{50}$ = 7 µg/ml

(f) MIC = 1240 µg/ml
IC$_{50}$ = 880 µg/ml

(g) MIC = 4.5 µg/ml
IC$_{50}$ = 1.6 µg/ml
The antimicrobial effect of AMD has not been well-documented; however it would seem that the presence of two S-atoms in this methylated compound greatly contributes to its biological activity, as AMS did not inhibit parasite growth at the concentrations tested. Allicin, the primary biologically active component of the garlic clove, was less potent than ajoene, AA and AMD, having a comparably high MIC value of 1240 µg/ml against *S. vortens* growth. This value is comparable to that documented previously by Millet et al. (2011a, >160 µg/ml).

The synergistic activity of garlic-derived compounds with drugs has been well-documented (see review by Sivam 2001). For example, garlic extracts have been shown to have synergistic activity with chloroquine, ampicillin and omeprazole against *Plasmodium berghei*, *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Helicobacter pylori*, respectively (Perez et al. 1994; Jonkers et al. 1999; Eja et al. 2011). In the current study, significant synergy between MTZ and ajoene oil was obtained using concentrations of 0.25 and 0.2 µg/ml, respectively. This results in a 16-fold reduction from the individual MIC of MTZ, using a 200-fold decrease in the in vitro MIC of ajoene oil. The efficiency of this ajoene-MTZ combination against *S. vortens* infections in angelfish was confirmed in vivo. Treated flake food containing 0.5% ajoene oil or 0.5% MTZ individually did not significantly reduce *S. vortens* infections in angelfish. For the MTZ food treatment, this was not surprising as the recommended dose for ornamental fish is higher than the concentration employed here (10 mg/g flakes or 1%, Francis-Floyd & Reed 1994). However, when this 0.5% MTZ dose was combined with just 0.05% ajoene oil in flake food, a significant reduction in *S. vortens* infection was observed. The observed synergy between ajoene and MTZ may be explained by the complimentary modes of action of these compounds. Williams et al. (2012) demonstrated that ajoene depletes intracellular thiols and inhibits the thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) of *S. vortens* at concentrations close to the in vitro MIC.
and IC$_{50}$, respectively, as documented here. TrxR and other non-protein thiols are important cellular antioxidants, which play a key role in detoxification of reactive O$_2$ species within cells (see review by Müller et al. 2003). MTZ had a similar effect to ajoene, but was also shown to form covalent adducts with several redox-related proteins (Williams et al. 2012, Chapter 5). Hence, treatment of S. vortens with ajoene and MTZ leads to redox imbalance, which results in severe oxidative stress and eventually cell death. The MTZ bath treatment, consisting of 0.0005% MTZ in 1 L water (the recommended dose in fish, Tojo & Santamarina 1998), also significantly reduced S. vortens infections, further validating this dose for successful treatment of ornamental fish.

![Graph](image)

**Fig. 4.3.** *Spironucleus vortens* Sv1 growth over time under incubation with various concentrations of metronidazole (MTZ) by optical cell density monitoring at 420-580 nm.
Fig. 4.4. Boxplots of *Spironucleus vortens* faecal trophozoite counts in angelfish before (B) and after (A) treatment with untreated flakes (Group 1) 0.5% (v/w) ajoene flakes (Group 2), 0.5% (v/w) metronidazole (MTZ) flakes (Group 3), a combination of 0.05% ajoene and 0.5% MTZ (v/w) flakes (Group 4) and a 0.0005% (w/v) MTZ bath treatment (Group 5). Circles indicate outliers in the data set. Red asterisks indicate treatments where trophozoite faecal counts were significantly lower after treatment as compared to before treatment.
The *in vitro* MIC values of ajoene oil, AA and DADS against the new *S. vortens Sv1* strain (ca. 3 months in culture) was similar to that of the ATCC strain (ca. 22 years in culture). Interestingly, however, the MIC of MTZ could not be determined against this new isolate. None of the MTZ concentrations tested (≤100 µg/ml) completely inhibited the growth of this strain, resulting in prolonged lag phases and an increase in cell density over time at all concentrations tested. This suggests that the *Sv1* strain is less susceptible to MTZ than the ATCC strain and may be the result of increased drug pressure in the ornamental aquaculture industry, or as an artefact of prolonged *in vitro* culture. This highlights the need for more in depth investigation into the prevalence and mechanism of MTZ resistance in aquaculture, and emphasizes the importance of identification and development of alternative treatments for effective parasite control.

The current study provides an in-depth account of the inhibitory effects of a wide range of garlic derivatives against *S. vortens* growth and demonstrates, for the first time, the synergistic activity of ajoene with MTZ. A more comprehensive study using a higher concentration of ajoene oil should be conducted in order to assess whether addition of this stable garlic derivative into fish food can be used to treat and/or prevent *S. vortens* infections in fish. If successful, incorporation of ajoene oil as an additive to fish food may be of great commercial interest and could be applied to control Spironucleosis in ornamental and food aquaculture alike.

### 4.6. REFERENCES


Chapter 4: Synergy of ajoene and metronidazole


Chapter 4: Synergy of ajoene and metronidazole


Odds FC (2003). Synergy, antagonism, and what the chequerboard puts between them. J Antimicrob Chemother 52: 1


Williams CF, Lloyd D (2012). Composition and antimicrobial properties of sulphur-containing constituents of garlic (Allium sativum). In: Essential Oils as Natural Food Additives: Composition, Quality and Antimicrobial Activity. Valgimigli L (Ed), Nova Publishers, Inc. NY, USA, pp 287-304

Chapter 5

Disrupted intracellular redox balance of the diplomonad fish parasite *Spironucleus vortens* by 5-nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds
Disrupted intracellular redox balance of the diplomonad fish parasite *Spironucleus vortens* by 5-nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds

5.1. ABSTRACT

The 5-nitroimidazole, metronidazole, has traditionally been employed in veterinary medicine to treat a range of infections including the diplomonad fish parasite *Spironucleus*. This study aims to determine the mode of action of metronidazole on *Spironucleus vortens*, including the specific mechanism of activation of the pro-drug and subsequent cellular targets of the drug metabolites. Due to the ban on use of metronidazole in the treatment of production animals in Europe and USA, garlic-derived compounds were also investigated as natural alternatives to metronidazole chemotherapy. Scanning electron microscopy (SEM) provided an overview of gross cellular damage caused by metronidazole and garlic derivatives. Proteomic analyses by 2D gel electrophoresis identified the proteins involved in specific covalent adduct formation with nitroimidazoles. Furthermore, thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) activity and non-protein thiol concentration were assayed in extracts of *S. vortens* before and after treatment with nitroimidazoles and garlic-derivatives. Metronidazole and
garlic-derived compounds caused severe damage of trophozoites indicated by membrane blebbing and lysed cell debris. Analysis of the *S. vortens* proteome identified several proteins capable of specific nitroimidazole binding, including: uridine phosphorylase, enolase, protein disulphide isomerase, aminoacyl-histidine dipeptidase and malic enzyme. Of the compounds tested, metronidazole and the garlic-derived compound ajoene were the most effective at inhibiting TrxR activity and depleting non-protein thiols. These data suggest TrxR-mediated activation of nitroimidazoles, leading to depletion of non-protein thiols. Redox imbalance due to antioxidant failure is implicated as the mode of action of nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds, ultimately leading to cell death. Possible synergy between garlic derivatives and metronidazole should be further investigated *in vitro* in order to determine their theoretical implications.

5.2. INTRODUCTION

The protozoan parasite, *Spironucleus vortens* (Poynton et al. 1995), is a flagellated diplomonad which commonly infects the hindgut of ornamental fish. Its host range extends from tropical cichlids, such as angelfish, to the ide, a cold water cyprinid (see review by Williams et al. 2011). Onset of systemic infection is thought to be associated with ‘stress’ of the fish host, with Spironucleosis being linked to ‘hole-in-the-head disease’, a common manifestation causing high mortality in cichlids (Paull and Matthews 2001). The global trade in ornamental fish is a multi-million dollar industry, with imports and exports worth an estimated $283 million and $238 million respectively (European Commission 2008). Treatment of Spironucleosis is therefore of significant importance in aquaculture.

Metronidazole, a 5-nitroimidazole derivative, the “gold-standard” treatment for a range of microaerophilic and anaerobic pathogens, was the traditional drug of choice against Spironucleosis (Freeman & Klutman 1997; Sangmaneedet and Smith 1999). However, the drug has been banned from use in the treatment of food fish in Europe and USA, due to its potential carcinogenic properties, persistence in the environment and toxicity to aquatic organisms (Lanzky & Halting-Sørensen 1997; Commission Regulation No. 613/98 1998; Payne et al. 1999). Despite this, metronidazole is still available by veterinary prescription for the treatment of ornamental fish, and is widely used in some areas of South East Asia (Mohamed et al. 2000). However, it was recently shown that *Allium sativum* (garlic)-derived compounds have an inhibitory effect on the growth and gas metabolism of *S. vortens in vitro* (Millet et al. 2010). Garlic is a broad-spectrum antimicrobial agent, exhibiting antibacterial, antifungal, antiprotozoal and antiviral properties (Tsai et al. 1985; Singh et al. 1990; Lun et
al. 1994; Tsao et al. 2003). The inhibitory effect of garlic extract on other important fish parasites, including *Ichthyophthirius* and *Gyrodactylus* has also been documented (Buchmann et al. 2003; Abd El-Galil & Aboelhadid 2011). Furthermore, there have been no cases concerning the development of garlic resistance by pathogens documented to date. These attributes make it an attractive alternative in the treatment of Spironucleosis in fish. In addition, further characterisation of the mode of action of garlic compounds may lead to the development of a new class of drug based on the complex chemistry of the garlic clove, having potent broad-spectrum antimicrobial activity.

In its administered form, metronidazole does not exert antimicrobial activity. Reductive activation at the drug nitro group by the target organism is required in order to generate the biologically-active nitroradical anion and further reduced intermediates (Lloyd & Pedersen 1985). Recent studies have questioned the long-standing belief that activation of the metronidazole pro-drug is mediated by pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR)-associated ferredoxin alone, with subsequent indiscriminate protein binding and DNA damage (Edwards 1993). Evidence is mounting for an alternative thioredoxin reductase (TrxR)-mediated nitroreductase activation pathway, as demonstrated in the protozoan parasites *Entamoeba histolytica, Trichomonas vaginalis* and *Giardia intestinalis* (see Leitsch et al. 2007, 2009, 2011). In both *E. histolytica* and *T. vaginalis*, subsequent binding of metronidazole metabolites to specific protein targets occurs, most of which are associated with Trx-mediated redox regulation (Leitsch et al. 2007, 2009). Metronidazole activation is also coupled with depletion of intracellular non-protein thiols, which are major components of the cellular antioxidant system, further implementing redox imbalance as the mode of action of metronidazole.

The chemistry of the garlic clove is complex, and the mode of action of garlic derivatives has not been fully elucidated. Allicin (diallyl thiosulphinate), the primary biologically active component of the garlic (Cavallito & Bailey 1944), undergoes rapid decomposition to form other active reaction products including allyl alcohol (AA), diallyl disulphide (DADS), higher polysulphides as well as ajoene (see review by Williams & Lloyd 2012). However, allicin itself has been documented to inhibit cysteine proteinases, alcohol dehydrogenases and, much like metronidazole, the TrxR of *E. histolytica* (see Ankri & Mirelman 1999). Both AA and DADS cause oxidation of NAD(P)H and depletion of glutathione, coupled with an increase in H$_2$O$_2$ production in the pathogenic yeast *Candida albicans*, causing severe oxidative stress and, in the case of DADS, apoptotic cell death (Lemar et al. 2005, 2007). Furthermore, ajoene is documented to change the phospholipid
composition of the protozoan parasite *Trypanosoma cruzi*, which contributes to create an anti-proliferative effect (Urbina et al. 1993). Thus, the mode of action of metronidazole and some garlic-derived compounds are similar in that they target important intracellular redox components.

In order to exploit antimicrobial agents to their full potential, it is critical to understand their mode of action in relation to specific target(s) in different hosts. In this study *S. vortens* was chosen to further investigate the nitroreductase activity of TrxR in protozoan parasites, specifically that of the diplomonads. Furthermore, the mode of action of garlic derivatives, AA, DADS, allicin and ajoene, was investigated as a potential alternative therapy to metronidazole in the treatment of Spironucleosis in fish. This was achieved using a novel combination of high resolution scanning electron microscopy (SEM), proteomic techniques and enzyme assays.

### 5.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### 5.3.1. Organism and culture

*S. vortens*, ATCC 50386, trophozoites were maintained in Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium as previously detailed in Chapter 2, section 2.2. For some experiments, cells were incubated in 30 ml capacity culture flasks (Costar), with no head space where O₂ scavenging by cells generated an atmosphere of low O₂ tension. Parasite viability was monitored according to cell motility and visual estimation of cell density by phase contrast microscopy.

#### 5.3.2. Inhibitors

Garlic derivatives allicin and ajoene were prepared by NEEM Biotech Ltd., with their purities assessed by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC). Preparations of allicin and ajoene had purities of 2% (v/v) and 16-18.2% (v/v), respectively. Unless otherwise stated, all other antimicrobials and chemicals were sourced from Sigma-Aldrich. The purity of allyl alcohol (AA) and diallyl disulphide (DADS) was 99+% and 80%, respectively. The concentration range of all inhibitors employed during this study are within the range of the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) or IC₅₀ (the concentration which inhibits parasite growth by 50%) as determined in Chapter 4 and provided in molar concentration in Table 5.1. This applies to all compounds apart from allicin, due to the already low allicin content present in the preparation provided.
Table 5.1. Final concentration in µM of garlic-derived components used in quantification of *Spironucleus vortens* non-protein thiols. The minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) and IC$_{50}$ (concentration which reduces growth by 50%) of these compounds against *S. vortens* growth is also provided for comparison (as determined in Chapter 4). ND = not determined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dilution factor</th>
<th>Allicin</th>
<th>Ajoene oil</th>
<th>Allyl alcohol</th>
<th>Diallyl disulphide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6,250</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2680</td>
<td>880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12,500</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1340</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25,000</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>670</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:50,000</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:100,000</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>8000</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC$_{50}$</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.3. Scanning electron microscopy (SEM)

*S. vortens* cultures were incubated for 1, 2, 4, 24 and 48 h with 50 µM metronidazole and 1:25000 dilution of AA, DADS, allicin and ajoene (corresponding to 0.7 mM, 0.2 mM, 5 µM and 30 µM of each component respectively) or left untreated. For metronidazole and ajoene, these concentrations are close to the *in vitro* MIC’s of these compounds against *S. vortens* (see Millet et al. 2010). Samples were removed aseptically from each tube at the specified time intervals and fixed overnight (ca. 18 h) with 2% (v/v) glutaraldehyde in 0.5 M PIPES buffer (pH 7.2, containing 0.2 M sucrose and 2 mM CaCl$_2$). Samples were then washed in PIPES buffer (10 min, room temperature) and post-fixed in 1% (w/v) buffered osmium tetroxide (1 h, 4°C) in the same buffer. Following a second wash step in PIPES buffer, samples were dehydrated using a graded series of 50, 70, 90 and 100% ethanol (v/v, Fisher Scientific) (10 min each, room temperature). After being air dried in 100% ethanol on 13 mm diameter filter paper (0.2 µm pore size, Gelman Sciences), samples were coated with gold-palladium using a BioRad SC500 sputter coater and imaged under high vacuum using an FEI XL30 ESEM FEG fitted with
a secondary electron detector. Standard operating conditions were employed with an accelerating voltage of 10 kV, spot size 4 and a working distance of ca. 10 mm.

5.3.4. Sub-lethal incubation of *S. vortens* with inhibitors

*S. vortens* cells, grown under low O$_2$ tensions (as described above) were incubated for a sub-lethal incubation period with nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds. This sub-lethal incubation period was determined by monitoring cell motility post-treatment at 30 min intervals. *S. vortens* trophozoites are capable of rapid swimming behaviour; however, under severe oxidative or chemotherapeutic challenge, cell motility is rapidly lost. Motility therefore provides a powerful tool for assessing *S. vortens* vigour. Incubation was terminated when cell motility had been reduced from rapid swimming to a twitching-motion, indicating severe chemotherapeutic stress. For nitroimidazoles and AA, an incubation period of 3 h was adequate to induce this effect (at concentrations of 50 µM and 0.7 mM, respectively). However, a 24 h incubation period was required to produce the same effect for DADS, allicin and ajoene treatment (0.2 mM, 5 µM and 30 µM, respectively). These incubation times were subsequently implemented in subsequent experiments.

5.3.5. Two-dimensional polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (2DE)

*S. vortens* trophozoites were incubated with and without 50 µM of the 5-nitroimidazoles metronidazole, tinidazole and the 2-nitroimidazole azomycin (the latter two compounds were used as nitroimidazole controls), 0.7 mM AA and 30 µM ajoene for a sub-lethal period of incubation, at room temperature (as described above). Cells were then washed 4x in chilled PBS (pH7.2, containing, per L; 8 g NaCl, 0.2 g KCl, 1.44 g Na$_2$HPO$_4$ and 0.24 g KH$_2$PO$_4$) to remove serum components, harvested by centrifugation (1,250 g, 5 min) and the resultant pellets disrupted with 10% (w/v) trichloroacetic acid (TCA) in acetone at -20°C for 1 h. The resultant protein precipitates were then quantified, according to Bradford assay (see Chapter 2, section 2.4), processed and subject to 2DE according to Leitsch et al. (2005). Briefly, a minimum of 300 µg protein was diluted in rehydration buffer (8 M urea, 2 M thiourea, 0.5% Chaps, 15 mM dithiothreitol and 0.2% v/v ampholytes, pH 3-10) in a total volume of 400 µl. Bromophenol Blue (1 µl of a 0.4% w/v in 50% v/v glycerol solution) was then added to the protein extract and the entire sample transferred to an isoelectric focusing (IEF) rehydration tray. IEF was conducted with 18 cm immobilized pH gradient strips using the following program; rehydration for
12 h at 50 V, 1 h at 150 V, 1 h at 300 V, 1 h at 2000 V, 2 h at 5000 V and 7 h at 8000 V. IEF strips were then rinsed, equilibrated and transferred to vertical polyacrylamide (12.5% w/v) gels (30% T, 3% C) in 25% resolution buffer (1.5 M Tris/HCl, pH 8.8, 0.4% SDS and 5% v/v glycerol) overlaid with 0.8% agarose in resolution buffer. Gels were run overnight (ca. 18 h) at 4°C. Following 2DE, gels were stained using Coomassie brilliant blue R-250 (Bio-Rad). After de-staining in distilled H₂O, gels were imaged using an Epson 1680 Pro scanner with Melanie 2D gel analysis software (GeneBio, Geneva) for evidence of shifted protein spots between treated and untreated samples. Determination of shifted proteins was based on the following criteria: (1) the protein must be shifted by at least two different nitroimidazoles, and (2) the shifts should be differentially wide, depending on the nitroimidazole applied. The 5-nitroimidazole, tinidazole, produces shorter shifts than metronidazole, whereas the 2-nitroimidazole, azomycin, produces wider shift patterns with a smaller concentration of protein in the shifted position. Protein spots of interest were manually excised from the gel, and the resultant gel plugs (1.5 mm dia.) prepared for protein identification by mass spectrometry, as outlined below.

5.3.6. Liquid chromatography mass spectrometry (LC-MS)

Tryptic digestion of Coomassie stained protein spots was performed as described previously by Kolarich et al. (2006) with minor modifications. In contrast to the published procedure, 1 µl trypsin (proteomics grade, Roche) containing 200 ng/µl was mixed with 2 µl of 25 mM ammonium bicarbonate in the re-swelling step. All the solvents used in the study were LC-MS grade (acetonitrile, formic acid (98%) and ammonium bicarbonate obtained from Fluka Analytical, Munich, Germany). Mass spectrometric analyses were performed on an AmaZon ETD ion trap (Bruker Daltoniks, Bremen, Germany) coupled to an Ultimate 3000 UHPLC system (Dionex). The instrument was set up to perform both collision-induced dissociation (CID) and electron-transfer dissociation (ETD) fragmentation on the selected precursors. A m/z range from 400-1500 Da was used for data dependent precursor scanning. The three most intense signals in every MS scan were selected for MS/MS experiments, and only signals with a charge state ≥ 2+ were selected for MS/MS. All data was recorded in the enhanced resolution mode. Tryptic peptides were online separated by reversed phase chromatography (ProteCol™ Capillary Column, SGE, Ringwood, Vic, Australia; 300 µm x 10 mm [trap column] and 300 µm x 150 mm [analytical column]). The samples were loaded onto the trap column in 100% solvent A (0.1% formic acid) and unbound
components were eluted by washing the trap column for 5 min in buffer A at a flow rate of 10 µl/min. The starting conditions for the analytical column were 2% solvent B (acetonitrile with 0.1% formic acid) and the flow rate on the analytical column was held at 5 µl/min throughout the experiment. After desalting the sample on the trap column, a gradient using an increasing solvent B concentration was applied. The gradient conditions were as follows: linear increase of buffer B from 2 to 30% (from 5 min to 61 min), further increase to 60% (61 to 76 min), followed by a steep increase to 90% (76 to 77 min). The column was held at 90% B for 5 min (77 to 82 min) before re-equilibrating the analytical column in 2% solvent B. Meanwhile, the trap column was re-equilibrated in 100% solvent A before injection of the next sample. Peptide trapping and reversed phase separation was performed at a column temperature of 45°C.

5.3.7. Mass spectrometric data analysis

Data analysis was performed using ProteinScape 3 (Bruker Daltonics) and MASCOT 2.3 (MatrixScience, UK) using the following search parameters: cysteine as carbamidomethyl was set as fixed modification, deamidation (Asn/Gln) and oxidation (Met) were set as variable modifications. Up to 2 missed cleavages were allowed. Peptide tolerance (both MS and MS/MS) was set at ± 0.2 Da. The data was searched against the NCBI protein database (no restriction in taxonomy), the SwissProt database (taxonomy restriction: mammalian; for identification of any trypsin and/or human contaminations) and against a publicly available *Spironucleus vortens* EST database (retrieved from http://genome.jgi-psf.org/Spivo0/Spivo0.info.html). The latter allowed identification of a number of entries in the database with high confidence, subsequently enabling the use of the identified sequences for BLAST searches against various databases, which in turn permitted assignment of potential functions based on protein sequence homology. The following bioinformatic tools were used to annotate the selected sequences: BLAST, FASTA, Homstrad Blast, ProDom, Pfam, Inter Proscan, Conserved Domain and HMMER. BLAST searches were performed in NCBI using the PSI-BLAST application at NCBI (www.ncbi.nih.gov/BLAST/). FASTA searches were executed in EMBL-EBI where the sequences were searched against all the available protein databases (http://www.ebi.ac.uk/Tools/services/web/toolform.ebi?tool=fasta&context=protein). Furthermore, the sequences were run through the conserved domain database (CDD) at NCBI to identify any existing domains that might be indicative for the function of the gene(s) identified. The conserved domains in the respective identified sequences were
taken from the output result (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Structure/cdd/cdd.shtml). The protein database of Clusters of Orthologous Groups (COGs) is a tool to phylogenetically classify the complete complement of proteins (both predicted and characterized) encoded by complete genomes (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/COG/old/xognitor.html). The default parameters of the COGNITOR were applied in our study. PFAM (http://pfam.sanger.ac.uk/) was used to further analyse the domains identified with CDD and COGNITOR. There, too, default parameters were used. When PFAM-A did not provide a meaningful result, PFAM-B was used. The lowest e-value for the hits was taken. The ProDom web server (http://prodom.prabi.fr/prodom/current/html/home.php) provides the user with a set of tools to visualize multiple alignments, phylogenetic trees and domain architectures of proteins, as well as a BLAST-based server for analysing new sequences for homologous domains. This tool was used in addition to the above domain and motif search tools. Default parameters were used and results with lowest e-value were selected. Scanprosite (http://expasy.org/prosite/) and Interproscan (http://www.ebi.ac.uk/Tools/InterProScan) were used with default parameters as additional tools analysing domains and motifs present in the protein sequences identified. HMMER was applied for searching sequence databases for homologs of protein sequences, and for making protein sequence alignments (profile hidden Markov model for sequence, http://hmmer.janelia.org/). To exclude any false positives and background introduced during sample preparation the data generated was used to perform MASCOT searches against the SWISSPROT database (using same criteria as mentioned above, taxonomy limitation: Mammalia). This allowed establishing a sample background derived from keratin and trypsin peptides.

5.3.8. Determination of thioredoxin reductase activity

*S. vortens* trophozoites were grown under low *O*₂ tensions for 24 h, as described above. Cells were washed 3x and re-suspended in 1 ml PBS, before being subject to two cycles of rapid freeze-thawing in liquid *N*₂. A small sample of the resultant disrupted cell suspension was used to determine total protein concentration using Bradford assay (see Chapter 2, section 2.4). A Thioredoxin Reductase Assay Kit (Cayman Chemicals) was employed to measure the NADPH-dependent reduction of Ellman’s reagent, 5,5’-dithiobis-(2-nitrobenzoic acid) or DTNB, by the disrupted cell suspension (20 µl per reaction), where 1 unit is defined as the production of 2 µmol of the 2-nitro-5-thiobenzoate (TNB) product per min at 22°C. The specific TrxR inhibitor sodium
aurothiomalate (ATM, 20 µM) was used to discriminate between TrxR and non-TrxR reduction of DTNB. The inhibitory effect of metronidazole, tinidazole, AA, DADS, ajoene and allicin against *S. vortens* TrxR was investigated at a concentration of 20 µM. Inhibitors were added directly to the reaction. A Bioscreen C automated optical density monitoring system (Labsystems, Finland) was employed to monitor changes in OD every min for 10 min, using a 405 nm filter. TrxR activity was calculated using the DTNB extinction coefficient of 6.35 mM$^{-1}$ cm$^{-1}$ at 405 nm.

5.3.9. Determination of total non-protein thiols

*S. vortens* cells were incubated under low O$_2$ tensions with 50 µM metronidazole and tinidazole, and 1:6,250, 1:12,500, 1:25,000, 1:50,000 and 1:100,000 dilution of allicin, ajoene, AA and DADS (component equivalents are given in Table 5.1) in triplicate at 24°C, for a sub-lethal incubation period, as described above. Cells were harvested, washed 3x in PBS (pH 7.2) and disrupted in 20 mM EDTA and 0.1% (v/v) Triton-X100 (500 µl total volume) for 5 min. Insoluble material was removed by centrifugation and protein content of the supernatant determined by Bradford assay (see Chapter 2, section 2.4). Proteins (400 µl supernatant) were then precipitated in 20 mM EDTA (200 µl) and 20% (w/v) TCA (200 µl) for 5 min. Precipitated proteins were removed by centrifugation and the resulting non-protein thiols in the supernatant quantified. A 340 µl sample volume was added to 660 µl neutralization buffer (0.4 M Tris, pH 8.9; 20 mM EDTA) and 170 µl DTNB, and the optical density measured at 412 nm spectrophotometrically (Leitsch et al. 2007). The non-protein thiol content of the sample was determined using the DTNB extinction coefficient of 13.1 mM$^{-1}$ cm$^{-1}$ per mg protein.

5.3.10. Statistical analysis.

T-tests were performed in Minitab 15 to assess whether nitroimidazoles and garlic derivatives had a significant effect on TrxR activity and non-protein thiols of *S. vortens*.

5.4. RESULTS

5.4.1. Effects of metronidazole and garlic-derivatives on gross cellular morphology

Normal (untreated) *Spiroplasma vortens* trophozoites are pyriform in shape and possess a total of 8 flagella, of which 6 emerge anteriorly and 2 posteriorly (Fig 5.1a). It was not uncommon to see enlarged, rounded cells possessing >8 flagella, in untreated
samples, which are thought to be formed as a result of defective cytokinesis (Sangmaneedet and Smith 2000). Metronidazole, ajoene, allicin and diallyl disulphide (DADS) all caused extensive blebbing of the cell surface, indicating dead or dying cells (Figs 5.1b, d, e & f). These effects were most evident after ≥24 h incubation. However, allyl alcohol (AA) had the most pronounced effect, causing a noticeable reduction in cell number and a higher concentration of lysed cell debris after 24 h incubation (Fig 5.1c). A higher proportion of enlarged, irregular-shaped cells, having >8 flagella was also observed under metronidazole, DADS, allicin and ajoene treatment (visual estimation).

![Fig 5.1. Scanning electron micrographs of *Spironucleus vortens*. Normal, untreated trophozoites are pyriform-shaped possessing 8 flagella (a). Trophozoites were incubated for 24 h with 50 µM metronidazole (b), 0.7 mM allyl alcohol (c), 0.2 mM diallyl disulphide (d), 5 µM allicin (e) and 31 µM ajoene (f). Full arrows indicate cells with blebbing of the outer membrane, broken arrows show irregular-shaped cells with abnormal flagellar number, dotted arrows highlight lysed cell debris. Scale bars = 10 µm.](image-url)
5.4.2. Covalent adduct formation of 5-nitroimidazoles with discriminate *S. vortens* proteins

Two-dimensional gel electrophoresis of the total *S. vortens* proteome (Fig 5.2a) revealed specific nitroimidazole binding to 8 proteins (subsequently referred to as SvP1-8), indicated by a shift of the untreated native protein spot towards a more basic pI in the treated sample (Fig 5.2b). In order to verify that the protein shifts were attributed to binding of metronidazole rather than a physiological cellular response coinciding with the cytotoxic effect of drug treatment, *S. vortens* cells were also treated with another 5-nitroimidazole, tinidazole, and a 2-nitroimidazole, azomycin. Both tinidazole and azomycin have been shown previously to shift the same proteins as metronidazole in *E. histolytica* (see Leitsch et al., 2007). Thus, proteins were only deemed to have formed covalent adducts if shifts were produced by treatment with 2 or more nitroimidazoles (Fig 5.3). Differences in protein shift patterns produced by different nitroimidazoles are attributed to varying pKa’s between nitroimidazoles due to the presence of different side chains at the N1 position (Leitsch et al. 2007). Tinidazole produced shorter protein shifts than metronidazole, whilst azomycin produced wider protein shifts. In some instances, SvP3, 4, 5, 7 and 8, protein shifts by azomycin were not detected. In the case of SvP1, 4, 6 and 7, chains of adducts were formed as a result of nitroimidazole binding. Treatment of *S. vortens* with AA and ajoene did not result in reproducible shifts in specific proteins; therefore no further analysis was conducted for these treatments.

5.4.3. Assignation of protein function to 5-nitroimidazole bound proteins

Liquid chromatography mass spectra obtained from the 8 proteins of interest were searched against a publicly available EST database for *S. vortens*. This allowed identification of significant lengths of peptide stretches that in turn enabled BLAST homology searches using the obtained protein sequences. Useful sequence data could be acquired for all but one protein sample, SvP3, thus potential protein functions could be assigned to 7 of the 8 samples (see Table 5.2): SvP1, uridine phosphorylase and TrxR; SvP2, hypothetical protein; SvP4, enolase; SvP5, protein disulphide isomerase; SvP6, aminoacyl–histidine dipeptidase; SvP7, malic enzyme and SvP8, enolase. Protein spot Sv1 revealed significant amounts of two proteins, uridine phosphorylase and thioredoxin reductase (TrxR), however it should be noted that nitroimidazole induced shifting of this spot was not always reproducible (1/3 independent experiments). For SvP2, BLAST homology searching resulted in a high score for a hypothetical protein. It is also worth
Chapter 5: Nitroimidazole and garlic action against *Spironucleus vortens*

noting that enolase was also identified by MALDI TOF MS/MS (matrix assisted laser desorption ionization time of flight tandem mass spectrometry) and subsequent MASCOT database search (data not shown).

5.4.4. TrxR inhibition by nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds

The nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds tested had varying degrees of inhibition against *S. vortens* NADPH-dependent TrxR activity. Results are based on percentage differences from the untreated sample, having maximal (100%) TrxR activity of 1.08 ± 0.032 µmol/min/mg protein. All compounds tested had a minimum TrxR inhibition rate of ca. 50% at 20 µM (Fig 5.4). Of the 5-nitroimidazoles, metronidazole was the most effective, decreasing TrxR activity by 78 ±27% of the untreated sample. Tinidazole showed a lower degree of TrxR inhibition, diminishing activity by 29 ±16%. AA and DADS had similar activities to tinidazole, of 47 ±14% and 55 ±12%, respectively. However, the most efficient TrxR inhibitors of the compounds tested were the garlic constituents ajoene and allicin, which both inhibited TrxR activity by 100%.

![Fig 5.2. Complete two dimensional gel electrophoretogram of protein spots of interest, labelled SvP1-8, isolated from *Spironucleus vortens* (a) before and (b) after treatment with metronidazole. Proteins were manually excised from 2DE gels, trypsin digested and analysed by LC-MS. Full circles indicate native protein spots, broken ellipses indicate shifted proteins caused by metronidazole binding.](image-url)
**Chapter 5: Nitroimidazole and garlic action against *Spironucleus vortens***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>untreated</th>
<th>Mtz</th>
<th>Tz</th>
<th>Azo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SvP1</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP1" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP1" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP1" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP1" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP2</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP2" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP2" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP2" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP2" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP3</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP3" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP3" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP3" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP3" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP4</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP4" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP4" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP4" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP4" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP5</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP5" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP5" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP5" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP5" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP6</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP6" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP6" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP6" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP6" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP7</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP7" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP7" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP7" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP7" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SvP8</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Untreated SvP8" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Mtz SvP8" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Tz SvP8" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Azo SvP8" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig 5.3.** Comparison of shift patterns created by covalent adduct formation of *Spironucleus vortens* proteins (SvP1-8) with the 5-nitroimidazoles, metronidazole (Mtz) and tinidazole (Tz) and the 2-nitroimidazole, azomycain (Azo). Full circles indicate native proteins, arrows indicate shifted proteins. Broken circles indicate multiple shifts of the same protein caused by nitroimidazole treatment.
Table 5.2. *Spironucleus vortens* proteins (SvP1-8) identified from Capp database using MASCOT and ProteinScape.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Accession no.</th>
<th>MASCOT score</th>
<th>E-value</th>
<th>No. of shifts&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uridine phosphorylase (UPL-1) [<em>Giardia lamblia</em> ATCC 50803]</td>
<td>SvP 1</td>
<td>CAPP4686.g1</td>
<td>701.3</td>
<td>2e-92</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thioredoxin reductase</td>
<td>SvP 1</td>
<td>CAPP4408.g1</td>
<td>560.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>c 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetical protein FVAG_03003</td>
<td>SvP 2</td>
<td>CAPP409.G1</td>
<td>1474.6</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unidentified</td>
<td>SvP 3</td>
<td>CAPO2306.B1</td>
<td>40.2</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enolase [<em>Spironucleus vortens</em>]</td>
<td>SvP 4</td>
<td>CAPO2397.G1</td>
<td>753.6</td>
<td>2e-125</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein disulfide isomerase PDI2 [<em>Giardia lamblia</em> P15]</td>
<td>SvP 5</td>
<td>CAPP6312.g1</td>
<td>1134.1</td>
<td>6e-31</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malic enzyme [<em>Giardia intestinalis</em> ATCC 50581]</td>
<td>SvP 7</td>
<td>CAPP4306.B1</td>
<td>550.5</td>
<td>4e-83</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enolase [<em>Spironucleus vortens</em>]</td>
<td>SvP 8</td>
<td>CAPO2052.B1</td>
<td>1076.5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Numbering corresponds to protein spots in Fig 2 and 3

<sup>b</sup> No. of shifts after metronidazole treatment

<sup>c</sup> Not able to identify peptide fragment

5.4.5. Effects of nitroimidazoles and garlic-derivatives on total non-protein thiols

*S. vortens* total non-protein thiols were quantified according to the degree of DTNB reduction to TNB by thiol –SH groups. Percentage calculations are based on the concentration of thiols present in the untreated sample (21.17 ±4.35 nmol/mg protein), taken as 100% total thiols. The 5-nitroimidazoles metronidazole and tinidazole had different effects on the total non-protein thiol pool of *S. vortens* (Fig 5.5a). A concentration of 50 µM metronidazole caused a significant inhibition of thiol levels to 64 ±8% of the untreated sample. At concentrations >50 µM metronidazole, however, thiol levels returned to normal, a recovery which was significant (T-test, p =0.018). Tinidazole, on the other hand, caused a permanent decrease in thiol levels, significantly so at concentrations ≥25 µM (T-test, p≤0.005). The maximum degree of thiol depletion by
tinidazole was 65 ±2% of the untreated sample. AA caused a significant increase in the total thiol pool to 173 ±22% of the untreated sample, at a concentration of ca. 3 mM (Fig 5b, T-test, p=0.001). In contrast, DADS significantly depleted thiol levels by 74 ±11% of the untreated sample, at a concentration of 55 µM (Fig 5b, T-test, p=0.002). Ajoene and allicin both gave the same pattern of thiol depletion, whereby a burst in thiol levels was characteristic after treatment with low concentrations of the compounds (Fig 5c). In the case of allicin, for example, a significant increase in thiols in the thiol levels by 154 ±58% of the untreated sample was evident (T-test, p=0.011) at 2.5 µM. However, at higher concentrations, ajoene produced a significant depletion of thiols to 71 ±8% (100 µM, T-test, p=0.04) of the untreated sample, whilst allicin again caused a significant increase in thiol levels to 184 ±36% (20 µM, T-test, p=0.019).

5.5. DISCUSSION

Treatment of Spironucleus vortens with allyl alcohol (AA) caused a visible reduction in cell number, which was most prominent ≥24 h post incubation. This was coupled with a marked increase in concentration of lysed cell debris, indicating ruptured cells. Extensive membrane blebbing of cells treated with metronidazole, allicin and diallyl disulphide (DADS) is characteristic of severe cell injury. Membrane blebbing has been described as an early feature of apoptosis (Barros et al. 2003). Programmed cell death has not yet been examined in S. vortens, however an apoptotic cell death pathway was recently documented in G. intestinalis, a diplomonad relative of S. vortens (see Corrêa et al. 2009). In addition, metronidazole, allicin and DADS have all previously been documented to induce apoptosis in the protozoan parasite Blastocystis hominis and the yeasts Saccharomyces cerevisiae and Candida albicans, respectively (Nasirudeen et al. 2004; Lemar et al. 2007; Gruhlke et al. 2010). However, it is also possible that the membrane blebs observed here are indicative of necrotic cell death. Necrotic blebs are associated with more intense stimuli such as hypoxia, metabolic poisoning and a high concentration of free radicals, and occur at the final stages of necrosis, prior to cell lysis (Barros et al. 2003). A high proportion of irregular-shaped cells possessing abnormal flagellar number were also observed for metronidazole, DADS, allicin and ajoene treatments. This may indicate inhibition of cytokinesis during cell division, which occurs by longitudinal binary fission (Woo & Poynton 1995). However, lower proportions of such cells are also commonly observed under normal culture conditions (Sangmaneedet
Chapter 5: Nitroimidazole and garlic action against *Spironucleus vortens*

& Smith 2000), therefore at present, it is not clear whether this observation is drug-induced.

Analysis of the *S. vortens* proteome revealed 8 proteins which formed covalent adducts with the 5-nitroimidazoles, metronidazole and tinidazole. Protein functions could be assigned to 7 of the 8 nitroimidazole bound proteins, some of which have previously been identified as specific cellular targets of nitroimidazole metabolites. These include enolase and malic enzyme, which are specific metronidazole targets in *T. vaginalis* (see Leitsch et al. 2009) and uridine phosphorylase, a pyrimidine nucleoside phosphorylase, which bears similarities with previous observations in *E. histolytica* of nitroimidazole binding with a purine nucleoside phosphorylase (Leitsch et al. 2007). The other identified proteins, protein disulphide isomerase and aminoaoyl-histidine dipeptidase, are novel nitroimidazole targets in *S. vortens*. Interestingly, in the case of the 2-nitroimidazole, azomycin, covalent adducts were not always formed. In *E. histolytica*, all proteins were found to be consistently shifted by 2- and 5-nitroimidazoles (Leitsch et al. 2007). This may indicate differences in the mode of action of 2- and 5-nitroimidazoles in *S. vortens*.

Unlike previous data obtained for *E. histolytica*, *G. intestinalis* and *T. vaginalis* (see Leitsch et al. 2007, 2009, 2011), *S. vortens* TrxR was not one of the proteins that gave a clear pI shift in response to nitroimidazole binding. TrxR was however identified as a secondary protein isolated from protein spot SvP1 along with uridine phosphorylase. The close proximity of TrxR to other proteins on the gel may account for the lack of obvious nitroimidazole binding to TrxR in *S. vortens*. Interestingly, as for *E. histolytica*, *T. vaginalis* and *G. intestinalis* (see Leitsch et al. 2007, 2009, 2011) nitroimidazole binding with pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR) was not observed in *S. vortens*.

Despite the lack of obvious covalent adduct formation of nitroimidazoles with TrxR, enzymatic assay of this protein in *S. vortens* revealed significant inhibition by metronidazole. TrxR activity was reduced to 22% of its normal rate by metronidazole, which is more than double that reported for metronidazole-treated *E. histolytica* and *T. vaginalis* albeit using the recombinant enzyme expressed in *Escherichia coli* (see Leitch et al. 2007, 2009). This supports the Leitsch et al. (2007) hypothesis, thus implicating TrxR as a potential site of nitroimidazole activation in *S. vortens*. Inhibition of total non-protein thiols by metronidazole did not occur at similar concentrations to that of TrxR (20 µM), with significant thiol depletion only observed at 50 µM metronidazole. Interestingly, these thiol levels were significantly stimulated at elevated metronidazole
concentrations. This may indicate that *S. vortens* is capable of re-modelling its thiol antioxidant system, in response to inhibition of TrxR, which could be mediated by increased influx of cysteine from the culture medium. TrxR activity was inhibited to a lesser extent under tinidazole challenge to *ca.* 50% of normal function, with total non-protein thiol levels significantly decreased to the same degree. The *in vitro* MIC of tinidazole is reported to be higher than that of metronidazole for *T. vaginalis* treatment, which may account for differences in the degree of TrxR inhibition by these compounds (Sobel et al. 2001).

![Graph](image)

**Fig. 5.4.** The inhibitory effect of 5-nitroimidazoles, metronidazole (Mtz) and tinidazole, (Tz) and garlic-derived compounds, allyl alcohol (AA), diallyl disulphide (DADS), ajoene (Aj) and allicin (Al) on the NADPH-dependent activity of *Spironucleus vortens* thioredoxin reductase. Asterisks indicate points of significant difference from the untreated sample (*T*-test, *p*≤0.05). Error bars represent standard deviation of replicates (n=2-4).
Chapter 5: Nitroimidazole and garlic action against *Spironucleus vortens*

![Graphs showing the action of Metronidazole, Tinidazole, Allyl alcohol, Diallyl disulphide, Ajoene oil, and Allicin against *Spironucleus vortens*.](image-url)
Inhibiting TrxR, along with depletion of intracellular thiols may explain the discriminate binding of nitroimidazoles to specific protein targets, outlined above. Enolase and malic enzyme have previously been described as redox-controlled enzymes, specifically as interaction partners of Trx, in plants and yeast, respectively (Anderson et al. 1998; Wong et al. 2003; Hara et al. 2006). It was suggested that nitroimidazole binding to purine nucleotide phosphorylase in *E. histolytica* could be due to reductase activity of this enzyme along with the presence of an imidazole moiety in the purine substrate (Leitsch et al. 2007). The same, however, cannot be said of uridine phosphorylase, found here to form covalent adducts with nitroimidazoles in *S. vortens*. To the best of our knowledge, no reductase activity has been associated with this enzyme and its pyrimidine substrate lacks an imidazole moiety. However, it is plausible that interaction of nucleotide phosphorylases with TrxR is required *in vivo* in order to maintain these enzymes in a reduced state for normal activity. Interestingly, one of the novel nitroimidazole protein targets in *S. vortens*, protein disulphide isomerase (PDI), belongs to the Trx superfamily and itself has two Trx-like catalytic domains (Freedman et al. 1988). PDI is a multifunctional enzyme which catalyzes thiol-disulphide oxidation, reduction and isomerisation during protein folding, and is therefore important in maintaining cellular redox balance (Ellgaard & Ruddock 2005). Increased expression levels of PDI2 in a metronidazole-resistant *G. intestinalis* C5 strain have previously been described, with no significant inhibition of recombinant enzyme activity when subject to metronidazole challenge (Müller et al. 2007). Thus, it is feasible that nitroimidazole binding to PDI does not interfere with the catalytic mechanism of this enzyme, and that increased expression in metronidazole-resistant isolates, which display minimal TrxR activity, may indicate the capacity of this enzyme to perform some of the roles of the thioredoxin system. Finally, the substrate of aminoacyl-histidine dipeptidase has been
described as an antioxidant in brain and muscle tissue, and also contains an imidazole ring (Kohen et al. 1988).

As for nitroimidazoles, the common characteristic of the garlic-derived compounds employed in the current study is that they have all previously been associated with inhibition of –SH containing enzymes (Ankri & Mirelman 1999; Gallwitz et al. 1999; Lemar et al. 2005, 2007). Indeed, allicin and ajoene had a clear inhibitory effect on *S. vortens* TrxR, with no detectible enzymatic activity being found at 20 µM of each compound. In the case of ajoene, this inhibitory effect was less pronounced on total non-protein thiol pools, only capable of significant thiol depletion at a much higher concentration of 100 µM, in a dose-dependent, hormetic effect. Conversely, allicin caused a significant increase in the non-protein thiol pool of *S. vortens*. However, the relatively low dose required to completely inhibit TrxR activity may again indicate a more complex antioxidant defence system present within the parasite, which may be able to compensate for inhibition of one system, e.g. Trx, by over-expression of another, as yet, uncharacterised system. AA produced a significant, albeit less pronounced, inhibition of TrxR activity, as compared to allicin, decreasing levels to ca. 50%. Total non-protein thiols, however, were mostly unaffected, and even increased at concentrations in excess of 1 mM. This is perhaps not surprising, as AA is readily oxidised to the toxic aldehyde acrolein by the action of alcohol dehydrogenase (Serafini-Cessi 1972). The mode of action of acrolein has previously been associated with inhibition of TrxR and depletion of Trx (Yang et al. 2004). DADS caused TrxR activity to drop to 45%, and significantly depleted *S. vortens* non-protein thiols, as previously described in *C. albicans* (see Lemar et al. 2007).

*S. vortens* is a parasite of great economic and veterinary importance in the aquaculture industry. Despite this, very few studies into the underlying biochemistry of the parasite have been conducted, making efficient chemotherapy challenging. This study is the first to investigate *S. vortens* proteomic interactions with novel and traditional chemotherapeutic agents. Results show that some parallels can be drawn between *S. vortens* and previously reported data on the medically important protozoan parasites *E. histolytica* and *T. vaginalis*. This is especially true in relation to the mode of action of nitroimidazoles, whereby TrxR activity is significantly reduced and specific redox-related proteins are targeted, thus supporting the theory of a novel pathway of nitroimidazole activation (Leitsch et al. 2007). The overall cellular consequences of activated nitroimidazoles and garlic-derived compounds are similar in that they result in severe
oxidative stress. Used in combination, these two classes of compounds might prove synergistic, thereby diminishing the metronidazole dosages required for effective parasite treatment. The extensive membrane blebbing observed after treatment with metronidazole, allicin and DADS is intriguing and may indicate the presence of a programmed cell death pathway in *S. vortens*, initiated by gross cellular redox and ionic imbalances. However, this needs further confirmation. Finally, the rapid doubling time, broad temperature range and aero-tolerant nature of *S. vortens* (see Millet et al. 2011a, b) make this parasite an ideal candidate to be a model organism for the discovery and development of new chemotherapeutic agents for protozoan parasites.

5.6. REFERENCES


Anderson LE, Li AD, Stevens FJ (1998). The enolases of ice plant and *Arabidopsis* contain a potential disulphide and are redox sensitive. Phytochemistry 47: 707-713


Chapter 5: Nitroimidazole and garlic action against *Spironucleus vortens*


Leitsch D, Kolarich D, Binder M, Stadlmann J, Altmann F, Duchêne M (2009). *Trichomonas vaginalis*: metronidazole and other nitroimidazole drugs are reduced by the flavin enzyme thioredoxin reductase and disrupt the cellular redox system. Implications for nitroimidazole toxicity and resistance. Mol Biol 72: 518-536


Chapter 5: Nitroimidazole and garlic action against Spironucleus vortens


Serafini-Cessi F (1972). Conversion of allyl alcohol into acrolein by rat liver. Biochem J 128, 1103-1107


Williams CF, Lloyd D (2012). Composition and antimicrobial properties of sulphur-containing constituents of garlic (Allium sativum). In: Essential Oils as Natural Food Additives: Composition, Quality and Antimicrobial Activity. Valgimigli L (Ed), Nova Publishers, Inc. NY, USA, pp 287-304


Chapter 6

Glucose and glutamate: energy-yielding substrates of *Spironucleus vortens*
CHAPTER 6:

Glucose and glutamate: energy-yielding substrates of *Spironucleus vortens*

6.1. ABSTRACT

Unlike their mitochondriate ancestors, anaerobic/microaerophilic protists lack cytochrome-mediated oxidative pathways for energetic metabolism and instead employ substrate-level phosphorylation and fermentative pathways. For *Spironucleus vortens*, a diplomonad fish parasite, little research has been conducted into its fermentative metabolism. In the current study, glucose, the major carbohydrate component of TYI-S-33 culture medium, was confirmed as a secondary substrate of *S. vortens*. Instead, glutamate, a major amino acid taken up from the culture medium, was found to stimulate energy production by *S. vortens* in the form of NAD(P)H. Uptake of glutamate by *S. vortens* was also linked to stimulation of reduced glutathione, and concomitant uptake of malate had an additive effect. *S. vortens* cultures incubated with excess glutamate were able to reach the same yield as those maintained in normal glucose-containing culture medium, hence generating an equivalent energy yield. Glucose itself led to slight oxidation of *S. vortens* intracellular NAD(P)H, which oscillated in accordance with H$_2$O$_2$ production by the organism. Furthermore, the fact that glucose was the only substrate tested to significantly stimulate O$_2$ consumption by *S. vortens* links the process of O$_2$ scavenging to energy derived from glycolysis. Enzymatic assays revealed the presence of glutamate dehydrogenase, aspartate aminotransferase, malic enzyme, pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase and hydrogenase in *S. vortens*. These findings evoke new hypotheses regarding the antioxidant system and versatile energy-yielding metabolism of *S. vortens*.

6.2. INTRODUCTION

*Spironucleus vortens* is a protozoan parasite of great economic and veterinary importance in the ornamental aquaculture industry (see review by Williams et al. 2011). The opportunistic nature of this parasitic trophozoite means that, in stressed or immunocompromised hosts, the pathogen may leave the alimentary canal (its primary habitat), traverse the gut epithelial lining and form systemic infections by transmission.
through the blood stream (Paull & Matthews 2001). Despite having been first isolated and described >20 years ago by Poynton et al. (1995), only recently have efforts focussed on characterizing the metabolic pathways of *S. vortens* (see Millet et al. 2010, 2011a).

Some protozoan parasites possess bacterial-like metabolic pathways, including the arginine dihydrolase pathway (*Giardia intestinalis*, see Schofield et al. 1990) and enzymes, e.g. pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR) and hydrogenase (Horner et al. 1999, 2000). Previous research suggests that metabolic processes in *S. vortens* are likely to differ, even from its closest characterized diplomonad relatives, e.g. *G. intestinalis*. The growth rate of *S. vortens* (doubling time 1.79 h) greatly exceeds that of *G. intestinalis* (ca. 8 h) and rivals that of the fastest growing eukaryote, *Achlya bisexualis*, a water mould, with a biomass doubling time of 0.85 h (Millet et al. 2011b). H₂ production by *S. vortens* (77 nmol/min/10⁷ cells, Millet et al. 2010) also exceeds that of *G. intestinalis* (2 nmol/min/10⁷ cells, Lloyd et al. 2002) and more closely resembles that of *Trichomonas vaginalis* (20 nmol/min/10⁷ cells, Ellis et al. 1992), a microaerophilic protozoan with well-defined hydrogenosomes (see review by Shiflett & Johnson 2010). Furthermore, *S. vortens* appears to lack the arginine dihydrolase pathway: it does however exhibit substantial proteolytic activity (Millet et al. 2011a). The latter is likely to play an important role in the ability of *S. vortens* to invade the intestinal epithelium and enter the bloodstream.

Another major difference between *Spironucleus* and *Giardia* is the apparent variation which exists in their mitochondrial-derived organelles (MDOs). *Giardia* has well-defined mitosomes, MDOs, which have lost almost all the canonical functions attributed to mitochondria (e.g. cytochrome-mediated oxidative phosphorylation) apart from iron sulphur cluster assembly, which has remained compartmentalised in *Giardia* mitosomes (Shiflett & Johnson 2010). *Spironucleus* spp., on the other hand, possess hydrogenosomes (Millet 2009; Millet et al. 2010; Jerlström-Hultqvist 2012; Williams et al. in press). These organelles have retained many more mitochondrial-derived functions than mitosomes, including substrate-level phosphorylation involving the fermentation of pyruvate to acetate, CO₂, H₂ and ATP (Chapman et al. 1985; 1986a; Steinbüchel & Müller 1986), in addition to components necessary for iron sulphur cluster assembly (reviewed by Lill 2009).

Millet et al. (2011b) discovered that growth of *S. vortens* displays an atypical biphasic pattern of logarithmic growth, whereby a slow preliminary phase increases sharply into a second rapid mode, referred to as μ₁ and μ₂, respectively. This was
explained by the fact that glucose (the principal carbohydrate component of the *S. vortens* culture medium) is a secondary substrate which is utilized only during the second stage of growth (μ2). Potential alternative substrates, including maltose (the main energy-yielding substrate of *T. vaginalis*, see Kuile 1994), arginine (alternative substrates for *G. intestinalis* and *T. vaginalis* see Schofield et al. 1990; Yarlett et al. 1996) and proline (the main energy-yielding substrate of trypanosomes, see Evans & Brown 1972), as well as pyruvate, serine and threonine were tested, but had no effect on the growth or gas metabolism of *S. vortens* (see Millet et al. 2011a). Hence, the primary energy-yielding substrate of *S. vortens* remains unknown; however it seemed likely to be an amino acid.

The main products of endogenous and glucose-supported metabolism of *S. vortens* were found to be identical, consisting of ethanol, lactate, acetate and alanine. The ratios of acetate and alanine differed, however, with more acetate than alanine being produced after the addition of glucose (Millet et al. 2011a). A similar scenario was observed in *G. intestinalis*, whereby a metabolic switch exists resulting in more acetate than alanine being produced under aerobic conditions (Paget et al. 1990). Alanine is a typical end-product of amino acid catabolism, when amino groups are transferred from glutamate to pyruvate (Lockwood & Coombs 1991). Hence, the amino acid pool derived from protein turnover could provide the primary substrates(s) of *S. vortens*.

In the current study, further potential candidates for the primary metabolic substrate of *S. vortens* were tested by spectrofluorimetry, O₂ electrode studies and optical density growth monitoring. Glutamate was one of the chosen substrates, which was previously found to be one of the major amino acids that were taken up by *S. vortens* from the culture medium (Millet et al. 2011a). Malate and pyruvate were also tested due to their roles in hydrogenosomal metabolism (Chapman et al. 1985, 1986a; Steinbüchel & Müller 1986; Hrdý & Mertens 1993). Enzymatic assays were conducted to investigate the presence and activity of metabolic enzymes in this organism.

### 6.3. MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### 6.3.1. Organism and culture

Trophozoites of two *Spironucleus vortens* strains, ATCC 50386 and *Sv1* (isolated from juvenile English-bred angelfish, August 2011, described in Chapter 3), were maintained separately in Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium as described in Chapter 2, section 2.2.
6.3.2. **Spectrofluorometry**

Log phase trophozoites (~10^7 cells/ml) were washed 2x in PBS (pH 7.2) and re-suspended in 1 ml PBS. A 100 µl volume of this cell suspension was then introduced into a stirred glass cuvette containing 1.5 ml PBS and 0.4 ml Amplex Red (kit from Invitrogen) in order to monitor H_2O_2 production by the organism. Glutathione (GSH) reduction was detected indirectly via glutathione S-bimane, GSB, a fluorescent adduct formed after the reversible reaction between GSH and monochlorobimane (MCB) (catalyzed by glutathione S-transferase, GST). Pre-incubation of cells for 30 min with 50 µM MCB was followed by washing 3x with PBS. A spectrofluorometer (Photon Technology International) was used to record simultaneously, at several wavelengths, fluorescence emission from each cell suspension, according to Aon et al. 2010: (1) H_2O_2 (λ_ex 530 nm, λ_em 590 nm), NAD(P)H autofluorescence (λ_ex 340 nm, λ_em 450 nm), oxidised flavin (FAD) autofluorescence (λ_ex 480 nm, λ_em 530 nm), GSH (λ_ex 390 nm, λ_em 480 nm); and cell size (90° side scatter, λ_ex 520 nm, λ_em 585 nm) was also measured. Background readings were established for each cuvette before addition of cells. Changes in the emission of each probe were monitored over time after addition of 5 mM of the following substrates: (1) glucose, (2) pyruvate, (3) glutamate, (4) malate, (5) glutamate and malate. All experiments were conducted under aerobic conditions using air-saturated buffer at room temperature (21±1°C) with 2-8 replicates for each substrate.

6.3.3. **O_2 consumption by *S. vortens***

A Clark O_2 electrode was employed to monitor O_2 consumption by *S. vortens* in a 6 ml capacity closed system. The electrode was securely closed within the reaction vessel via an “O”-ring. O_2 was sensed by an Ag-Pt electrode covered by a gas-permeable Teflon membrane (4 M KCl electrolyte) and recorded using a chart recorder set at 5 mV FSD. All experiments were conducted at room temperature (20 ±1°C). Approximately 10^6 log-phase *S. vortens* trophozoites were washed 2x in PBS (pH 7.2) and suspended to a total volume of 3 ml in air-saturated PBS within the stirred reaction vessel. Glucose, glutamate, malate, a combination of glutamate and malate and pyruvate (5 mM each) were added to the cell suspension and subsequent changes in the rate of O_2 consumption calculated as a percentage of the endogenous rate. The changes in rates of O_2 consumption by both *S. vortens* strains at intervals over the range of 290 (air-saturated) to 0 µM O_2 were calculated from tangents taken from the decreasing gradients (n=2-12 for each substrate). The effect of different substrates on O_2 consumption by *S. vortens*
was compared statistically by ANOVA analyses in R (version 2.15.1; R Core Team 2012) using an \( \alpha \)-level of 0.05. The overall model had an F-value of 6.622 on 5 and 16 degrees of freedom and a p-value of 0.002 with all model assumptions being normally distributed.

### 6.3.4. Optical density growth monitoring

Trophozoite growth was measured by optical density monitoring using a Bioscreen C Reader, as described in Chapter 2, section 2.3. Briefly, ca. \( 10^4 \) log phase trophozoites (in a 10 \( \mu \)l volume) were inoculated into 290 \( \mu \)l normal (control) or modified TYI-S-33 culture medium in the compartments of 100 well honeycomb plates. \( O_2 \) scavenging by \( S. \) vortens as well as the chemical reductants (i.e. cysteine and ascorbate) present in the culture medium produced anaerobic-microaerobic conditions within the wells. Modifications of the culture medium were as follows: (1) no glucose, (2) no ferric ammonium citrate (FAC), (3) no new born calf serum (NBCS), (4) no glucose, FAC and NBCS; or replacing glucose with the following substrates (concentration range: 1, 2, 3, 5, 7.5, 30 or 60 mM); (1) pyruvate, (2) glutamate, (3) malate, (4) glutamate and malate, and, (5) glucose (positive control). Log phase growth rates (\( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \)) and final yield were calculated. The effect of different treatments on log-phase growth rates and yields of \( S. \) vortens were statistically compared to those of cells grown in normal culture medium using ANOVA analyses in R (version 2.15.1; R Core Team 2012) using an \( \alpha \)-level of 0.05. Each model had F-values of 75.25 and 229.10 on 9 and 20 degrees of freedom for \( \mu_1 \) and final yield, and 78.17 on 8 and 19 degrees of freedom for \( \mu_2 \). The overall p-values for each model were <0.0001 with all model assumptions being normally distributed.

### 6.3.5. Enzyme assays

Log phase trophozoites were washed 2x in PBS (pH 7.2) and re-suspended in disruption buffer (20 mM EDTA + 0.1% Triton X-100) for 15 min at room temperature. This cell disruption method was employed for enzymatic assay of aspartate aminotransferase, glutamate dehydrogenase and malic enzyme. For \( O_2 \)-sensitive enzyme assays, i.e. pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase and hydrogenase, cells were broken in a second disruption buffer (50 mM HEPES, 150 mM NaCl, 225 mM sucrose, 2 mM EDTA, pH 7.4) and shaken with acid-washed glass beads in a Braun MSK Cell Disintegrator (3x 30 s pulses at 4000 Hz) with all reagents and crude cell extracts kept anaerobic by sparging with \( N_2 \). Unbroken cells were pelleted at 800 g for 5 min and the supernatant retained for the assay (Ellis et al. 1993). Protein content was determined via
Bradford assay (Bradford 1976), as outlined in Chapter 2, section 2.4. A series of enzymatic assays were then conducted by adding 10 µl of a 1 mg/ml S. vortens protein extract (or purified enzyme, positive control) to the relevant reaction mixtures (after establishing a blank rate). All assays were conducted at room temperature (21±1°C) with a minimum of 2 replicates per assay. A spectrophotometer (Jenway 6300) was employed (path length 1 cm) to measure the change in absorbance over a 5 min period, with readings recorded at 30 s intervals, after addition of the enzyme to appropriate reaction mixtures as follows:

6.3.5.1. Aspartate aminotransferase (AST) activity (EC: 2.6.1.1): 134 mM L-aspartate, 6.64 mM α-ketoglutarate, 0.24 mM NADH, 5 U/ml lactate dehydrogenase, 1.25 U/ml malate dehydrogenase (MDH) in 50 mM sodium phosphate buffer (pH 7.4, Karmen 1955). The decrease in absorbance at 340 nm (oxidation of NADH) is directly proportional to AST activity. Specific enzyme activities were calculated using the NAD(P)H extinction co-efficient of 6.22 × 10³ M⁻¹ cm⁻¹.

\[
\alpha\text{-ketoglutarate} + \text{L-aspartate} \xrightarrow{\text{AST}} \text{L-glutamate} + \text{Oxalacetate}
\]

\[
\text{Oxalacetate} + \text{NADH} + \text{H}^+ \xrightarrow{\text{MDH}} \text{Malate} + \text{NAD}^+
\]

6.3.5.2. NADPH-specific glutamate dehydrogenase (GDH) activity (EC: 1.4.1.4): (1) forward reaction (reductive aminating activity); 100 mM Tris HCl (pH 8), 100 mM NH₄Cl, 10 mM α-ketoglutarate and 0.1 mM NADPH; (2) reverse reaction (oxidative deaminating activity); 100 mM Tris-HCl (pH 9); 200 mM glutamate and 0.1 mM NADP⁺ (Harper et al. 2010).

6.3.5.3. NADH-specific GDH activity (EC:1.4.1.2): (1) forward reaction; 100 mM phosphate buffer (HK₂PO₄/H₂NaPO₄; pH 7), 100 mM NH₄Cl, 10 mM α-ketoglutarate and 0.16 mM NADH; (2) reverse reaction; 100 mM phosphate buffer (pH 7), 100 mM L-glutamate and 2 mM NAD⁺ (Harper et al. 2010).

The decrease in absorbance at 340 nm (NAD(P)H oxidation) was recorded for the forward reactions, and vice versa for the reverse (NAD(P)⁺ reduction) reaction. Specific enzyme activities were calculated as above.
6.3.5.4. Malic enzyme (ME; decarboxylating) activity (EC: 1.1.1.39): 67 mM triethanolamine, 3.3 mM L-malic acid, 0.3 mM NADP$^+$ and 5 mM MnCl$_2$ (Geer et al. 1980). Specific enzyme activities were calculated as above.

\[
\text{L-malate} + \text{NADP}^+ \xrightarrow{\text{ME}} \text{Pyruvate} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{NADPH} + \text{H}^+
\]

6.3.5.5. Pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase activity (PFOR, EC: 1.2.7.1): 100 mM potassium phosphate buffer (pH 7.4), 20 mM dithiothreitol, 20 mM methyl viologen, 250 mM β-mercaptoethanol, 0.25 mM CoA and 0.1% (v/v) Triton X-100. A 2.5 mM Na-pyruvate solution was used to initiate the reaction after addition of the crude protein extract (100 µl). Methyl viologen replaced ferredoxin as the final electron acceptor. Reduction of this chromogen by PFOR was monitored at 600 nm, accompanied by a characteristic blue colour formation (Lindmark & Muller 1973). Specific enzyme activities were calculated using the methyl viologen extinction coefficient of $6.3 \times 10^3$ M$^{-1}$ cm$^{-1}$.

\[
\text{Pyruvate} + \text{CoA} + \text{Methyl viologen}_{\text{ox}} \xrightarrow{\text{PFOR}} \text{Acetyl CoA} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{Methyl viologen}_{\text{red}}
\]

6.3.5.6. Hydrogenase activity (Hyd, EC: 1.18.99.1): 100 mM phosphate buffer (pH 7.4), 20 mM methyl viologen, 250 mM β-mercaptoethanol and 100 µl crude protein extract to initiate the reaction. Reduction of methyl viologen was monitored at 600 nm, and specific enzyme rates calculated as above (Lindmark & Muller 1973).

\[
2 \text{H}^+ + 2 \text{e}^- + \text{Methyl viologen}_{\text{ox}} \xrightarrow{\text{Hyd}} \text{H}_2 + \text{Methyl viologen}_{\text{red}}
\]

6.3.5.7. Calculation of enzymatic rates. Enzymatic rates were calculated according to Beer’s Law:

\[
\Delta A = e c l
\]
Where, ΔA is the measured absorbance change (Δabsorbance/min), e is the molar extinction coefficient, l is the path length (1 cm), and c is the molar concentration (moles/L).

6.4. RESULTS

6.4.1. Effects of metabolic substrates on redox dynamics of Spironucleus vortens by spectrofluorimetry

Administration of 5 mM glucose, pyruvate, glutamate or malate, or glutamate and malate in combination resulted in a decrease in 90º side light scatter from cells in a stirred suspension, thereby indicating substrate uptake. Under these aerobic conditions, glucose resulted overall in slight oxidation of the NAD(P)H pool but in an oscillatory manner accompanied by H₂O₂ production (indicated in Fig 6.1a). Pyruvate led to oxidation of the NAD(P)H pool to a greater extent than glucose, decreasing the fluorescence emission to 90% of endogenous levels (Fig. 6.1b). This was coupled with a decrease in the rate of H₂O₂ production down to ca. 28% of the endogenous rate. Glutamate produced a 10% increase in NAD(P)H levels, coupled with a slight decrease in the rate of H₂O₂ production (to 76% of the endogenous rate) and slight reduction of FAD pools to FADH₂ (Fig. 6.1c). There was no noticeable immediate change in H₂O₂, NAD(P)H or FAD pools on administration of malate (Fig. 6.1d). In addition, there was no change in 90º size scatter from cells, indicating that this substrate may not have been taken up. A combination of glutamate and malate, however, led to a 15% increase in NAD(P)H pools (Fig. 6.1e). As well as this, reduction of intracellular thiols was also evident on addition of glutamate plus malate, specifically in the glutathione (GSH) antioxidant system (ca. +4% of the endogenous level).

6.4.2. Effects of metabolic substrates on O₂ uptake by S. vortens

Of the substrates tested, glucose (5 mM) was the only compound to cause a significant increase in O₂ consumption by S. vortens (ANOVA, t = 4.362, p<0.0005; Fig. 6.2). Addition of glucose to stirred suspensions of S. vortens resulted in a ca. 80% increase in O₂ uptake by the organism. None of the other substrates tested were significantly different from the endogenous O₂ consumption rate of 39.3 nmol/min/10⁷ cells (ANOVA, p<0.05).
Fig. 6.1. Spectrofluorometric detection of changes in intracellular NAD(P)H, FAD and glutathione (GSH), extracellular production of H$_2$O$_2$ and cell size (90º side scatter) of *Spironucleus vortens* after addition of substrates (5 mM each): (a) glucose, (b) pyruvate, (c) glutamate, (d) malate and (e) a combination of glutamate and malate. Each trace is representative of 2-8 replicates.

6.4.3. **Effects of metabolic substrates on the growth of *S. vortens***

Figure 6.3 summarizes the effect of different metabolic substrates on the growth of *S. vortens* under anaerobic-microaerobic conditions. All substrates were statistically compared to control growth rates (μ1 and μ2, Fig. 6.3a and 3b, respectively) and final yield (Fig. 6.3c) of cells grown in normal TYI-S-33 culture medium. Removing NBCS or
a combination of NBCS, FAC and glucose from the medium resulted in significant inhibition of logarithmic growth phases: \( \mu_1 \) (\( t=2.84, p=0.01 \) and \( t=3.20, p=0.004 \), respectively) and \( \mu_2 \) (no \( \mu_2 \) for culture medium without NBCS, \( t=5.11, p<0.0001 \) for culture medium without NBCS, FAC and glucose), as well as a decrease in overall final yield of cells (\( t=15.41, p<0.0001 \)). Eliminating FAC from culture medium resulted in an increase in the first logarithmic growth phase (\( \mu_1; t=4.17, p=0.0005 \)), decrease in the second logarithmic growth phase (\( \mu_2; t=11.91, p<0.0001 \)), but no significant difference in final yield (\( t>2.09, p>0.05 \)). Removal of glucose from the medium led to a significant increase in \( \mu_1 \) (\( t=7.77, p<0.0001 \)) and a significant decrease in \( \mu_2 \) and final yield (\( t=3.65, p=0.002 \) and \( t=9.59, p<0.0001 \), respectively). Addition of glutamate to the culture medium resulted in a significant decrease in the rates of \( \mu_1 \) (\( t=6.05, p<0.0001 \)) and \( \mu_2 \) (\( t=7.02, p<0.0001 \)), but no significant difference in final yield (\( t>2.09, p>0.05 \)), whilst malate, pyruvate and a combination of glutamate and malate resulted in a significant decrease in \( \mu_1 \) (\( t=13.89, 5.84 \) and 7.41, respectively and \( p<0.0001 \) for all), \( \mu_2 \) (\( t=22.32, 8.31 \) and 8.44, respectively and \( p<0.0001 \) for all) and final yield (\( t=30.88, p<0.0001; t=6.51, p<0.0001 \) and \( t=3.25, p=0.004 \), respectively) of the organism. Addition of malate in concentrations in excess of 7.5 mM completely inhibited \textit{S. vortens} growth.

**Table 6.1.** \textit{Spironucleus vortens} metabolic enzymes. Enzymatic activity of aspartate aminotransferase (AST), malic enzyme (ME), NAD(P)\(^+\)/NAD(P)H-dependent glutamate dehydrogenase (GDH), pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR) and hydrogenase (hyd) in \textit{S. vortens}. ND = not detected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enzyme assayed</th>
<th>No. of replicates</th>
<th>Rate (nmol/ min/ mg protein)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AST</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>363 ±12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ME</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2040 ±740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDH: (i) NAD(^+)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>92 ±8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) NADH</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) NADP(^+)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>149 ±50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) NADPH</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFOR</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>285 ±4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyd</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>296 ±208</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.4.4. Rates of activity of metabolic enzymes present in *S. vortens*

Enzyme activities of AST, ME, PFOR and Hyd were detected in *S. vortens*. GDH oxidative (but not reductive) deaminating activity was also detected. All enzymatic rates are summarized in Table 6.1.

![Graph showing percentage differences in O₂ consumption](image)

**Fig. 6.2.** Percentage differences in O₂ consumption by *Spironucleus vortens*, as compared to endogenous rates, after addition of substrates (5 mM): glucose, glutamate, malate, a combination of glutamate and malate or pyruvate. Asterisks (*) indicate substrates which caused a significant difference in O₂ consumption from endogenous rates (ANOVA, p<0.0005). Error bars indicate standard deviation values.
Chapter 6: Energy-yielding substrates of *Spironucleus vortens*

![Diagram](image)

- **Growth Rate 1**
- **Growth Rate 2**
- **Final Yield**

Legend:
- CM
- CM-FAC
- CM-Glu
- CM-NBCS
- CM-FGN
- Gtm
- Gtm+Mal
- Mal
- Pyr

Significance levels:
- ***: p < 0.001
- **: p < 0.01
- *: p < 0.05
6.5. DISCUSSION

The three experimental methods employed in this study were conducted under different O$_2$ tensions, which must be taken into account whilst formulating hypotheses on potential metabolic pathways present within *Spironucleus vortens*. This is because presence of minute concentrations of O$_2$ (<0.25 μM) have been shown to have major consequences on the metabolic end products of *Giardia intestinalis*, a related diplomonad parasite (Paget et al. 1993).

6.5.1. Open system, air-saturated conditions: spectrofluorimetry

Glutamate was found to be taken up immediately by *S. vortens* in an air-saturated buffer suspension and led to an increase in the reduced NAD(P)H pool of the organism. Enzymatic assay of *S. vortens* glutamate dehydrogenase (GDH) revealed that the enzyme is only capable of oxidative deaminating activity. This reaction results in the production of α-ketoglutarate and NH$_4$Cl from glutamate with energy generated in the form of NAD(P)H. This explains the burst in NAD(P)H produced on addition of glutamate, confirming its role as an energy-yielding substrate in *S. vortens*. Addition of glutamate also resulted in a decrease in H$_2$O$_2$ production by the organism. This may be linked to the concomitant increase in the intracellular reduced glutathione (GSH) pool of *S. vortens*, as glutamate is a major component in glutathione synthesis (see review by Attick & Nathan 1984). Components of the glutathione system, including GSH peroxidase are usually associated with detoxification of H$_2$O$_2$ to H$_2$O, which may explain the observation seen here. This finding is intriguing as anaerobic protozoa, including *G. intestinalis* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*, lack GSH and instead utilize cysteine as their major intracellular...
thiol (Brown et al. 1993; Ellis et al. 1994). Future studies are required to confirm the presence of a GSH antioxidant system and peroxidases in *S. vortens*.

Administration of malate alone did not affect the redox dynamics of *S. vortens*, with actual uptake of this substrate being questionable in this study when administered alone. Malate is known to be a substrate of hydrogenosomes (Hrdý & Mertens 1993) and *S. vortens* is reported here to have malic enzyme activity, which results in the formation of pyruvate and NAD(P)H. Intra-hydrogenosomal metabolic processes involve O$_2$-sensitive enzymes, including PFOR and hydrogenase (see review by Shiflett & Johnson 2010). Hence, if the presence of hydrogenosomes in *S. vortens* is confirmed, then the function of these organelles may be impaired under the aerobic conditions utilized in this experiment. Addition of malate with glutamate, however, had an additive effect on the reductive effect of glutamate. This finding is characteristic of mitochondria, whereby glutamate and malate are both substrates of complex I and are imported into these organelles via a malate-aspartate shuttle (Brand & Chappell 1974). There are no cytochromes present in *S. vortens* (see Williams et al. in press), however the organism may have retained a similar malate-aspartate antiporter from its mitochondriate ancestor.

Glucose, the main carbohydrate component of the culture medium produced oscillations in the intracellular NAD(P)H pool and H$_2$O$_2$ production by *S. vortens*, whereby bursts in NAD(P)H resulted in decreased production of H$_2$O$_2$. This suggests that energy derived from glucose is directly linked to O$_2$ consumption by the organism and may supply reducing power to a recently discovered flavodiiron protein (FDI), a terminal O$_2$ reductase found to be present in anaerobic protozoa, and which may be expressed in *Spironucleus barkhanus*, as it is represented in the genome (Di Matteo et al. 2008). The FDI protein of *G. intestinalis* and *T. vaginalis* converts O$_2$ to H$_2$O, explaining the decrease in H$_2$O$_2$ production observed after addition of glucose to the suspension. Indeed, energy generated from the oxidation of pyruvate is hypothesized to supply the FDI protein with reducing power via PFOR and ferredoxin (Chapman et al. 1986b; Smutná et al. 2009). This explains the observation of decreased H$_2$O$_2$ production as a result of the addition of pyruvate to *S. vortens*. PFOR activity in *S. vortens* was assayed under anaerobic conditions during this study. It therefore remains to be seen whether this O$_2$-sensitive enzyme could have remained active under the high O$_2$ tensions employed during the spectrophotometric assay employed here. Conversion of pyruvate to ethanol, lactate, acetate and alanine, the main products of endogenous/glucose-supported metabolism in *S.
vortens (see Millet et al. 2011a) results in oxidation of the NAD(P)H pool, which also explains this observation seen during the current study.

Fig. 6.4. Hypothesised pathways of glucose and glutamate metabolism and energy generation (in the form of NAD(P)H) by Spironucleus vortens. Two possible scenarios are given for glucose metabolism (1) cytosolic, or (2) hydrogenosomal. The latter has not yet been verified in S. vortens. Some enzymes included here have not yet been assayed in S. vortens and are indicated with a (?). Enzymes assayed during this study are highlighted in green. Metabolic end products are highlighted in red and are released from the cell (see Millet et al. 2011a). Fd, ferredoxin; Hyd, hydrogenase; FDI, flavodiiron protein; LDH, lactate dehydrogenase; PDC, pyruvate decarboxylase; ADH, alcohol dehydrogenase; ME, malic enzyme; MDH, malate dehydrogenase; PFOR, pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; GDH, glutamate dehydrogenase; ALT, alanine aminotransferase.
6.5.2. Closed system, air-saturated conditions: O\textsubscript{2} consumption studies

The only substrate tested here to significantly stimulate O\textsubscript{2} consumption by \textit{S. vortens} was glucose. This strengthens the hypothesis that energy derived from glucose-fueled metabolism enhances O\textsubscript{2} consumption by \textit{S. vortens}. A similar observation was found previously, whereby glucose increased \textit{S. vortens} O\textsubscript{2} uptake by 164\% (Millet et al. 2011a). The fact that direct addition of pyruvate, the end product of glycolysis and a hydrogenosomal substrate, did not enhance O\textsubscript{2} consumption could suggest that the FDI protein of \textit{S. vortens} is not entirely hydrogenosomal, but has a dual cytosolic location, as observed for the PFOR of \textit{T. vaginalis} (see Meza-Cervantez et al. 2011).

6.5.3. Anaerobic-microaerobic conditions: growth monitoring

Removal of glucose from culture medium results in a significant increase in the first log phase (\(\mu_1\)) of \textit{S. vortens} growth and significant reduction of the second log phase (\(\mu_2\)) and overall final yield. This confirms previous findings that glucose is a secondary substrate of \textit{S. vortens}, which is only utilized during \(\mu_2\) (Millet et al. 2011a). It appears that glucose is either inhibitory to growth during \(\mu_1\), or, as suggested by Millet et al. (2011a), that it may be accumulated and stored during \(\mu_1\) and only utilized as a metabolic substrate during \(\mu_2\). Indeed, the latter is true of \textit{G. intestinalis}, where glucose is accumulated and stored as glycogen during lag-phase and early logarithmic growth, before being utilized during late logarithmic growth (Pradhan et al. 2012). This finding was attributed to the biphasic activity of glycogen phosphorylase, which is minimal during the first 12 h of growth of newly established \textit{G. intestinalis} cultures, before increasing in activity from 12-32 h (Pradhan et al. 2012). Hence, future work should focus on characterising the presence and subsequent activity of glycogen phosphorylase in \textit{S. vortens}, which may explain glucose utilization as well as the biphasic growth pattern of this organism.

Replacement of glucose with an equivalent concentration of glutamate (60 mM) resulted in a significant decrease in both \(\mu_1\) and \(\mu_2\), but the final yield was not significantly different to that of glucose. This suggests near-equivalent energy yield from cells grown with glucose or glutamate additions to the culture medium (Bauchop & Elsden 1960; Lloyd & Calley 1965). However, glutamate is already present at a concentration of \textit{ca.} 45 mM in the culture medium, with \textit{S. vortens} having been shown previously only to utilize around 3.5 mM after 4 d (Millet et al. 2011a). Hence, glutamate is not limited within the culture medium. Nevertheless, final yields of cells grown with
the addition of 60 mM glutamate was significantly higher than those grown without glucose or glutamate, indicating that addition of excess glutamate does lead to enhanced growth. Addition of all other substrates tested (i.e. pyruvate, malate and a combination of glutamate and malate), up to a concentration of 60 mM each, resulted in significant inhibition of both growth rates and final yield. Malate was particularly inhibitory at concentrations in excess of 7.5 mM, resulting in zero growth. Hence, the identity of the primary substrate of choice for optimal *S. vortens* growth remains unknown. Future work should involve designing a well-defined culture medium in order to allow exclusion of potential substrates from the medium to better assess their effects on *S. vortens* growth.

New-born calf serum (NBCS) was found to be essential for *S. vortens* growth as its exclusion from the culture medium led to significantly reduced cell yields. Ferric ammonium citrate (FAC) is likely to be utilized by *S. vortens* during the second logarithmic phase of growth, however its removal from the culture medium did not significantly alter the final cell yield. FAC is an important source of iron for anaerobic/microaerophilic protozoans, which is employed in Fe-S clusters present in important metabolic enzymes, e.g. hydrogenase (Adams 1990). However, after ca. 3 subsequent subcultures excluding FAC from the medium, cell yield was found to be greatly decreased (data not shown). Hence, iron is confirmed as an important nutrient for long-term *S. vortens* growth.

Hydrogen is another metabolic end product of *S. vortens*, produced at a rate of 77 nmol/min/10^7 cells (Millet et al. 2010). This study confirms the presence of hydrogenase activity in *S. vortens*. In anaerobic protists H₂ production serves as a means of removing excess reducing power (as electrons and protons) from cells under anaerobic conditions (Lloyd et al. 2002). In *T. vaginalis*, O₂ sensitive enzymes, including hydrogenase and PFOR, are partially protected from O₂ by their compartmentalization in the hydrogenosomes (Shiflett & Johnson 2010). It remains to be confirmed whether *S. vortens* possesses hydrogenosomes, or like its distant relative, *Giardia*, all its energy-yielding metabolic pathways are cytosolic. Under highly oxidizing conditions these enzymes may be irreversibly inhibited, leading to knock on consequences on their metabolic pathways. In *G. intestinalis* and *Hexamita inflata*, alanine production was found to vary under different O₂ tensions, being highest under anaerobiosis (Paget et al. 1993; Biagini et al. 1998). Like *S. vortens*, *H. inflata* was able to grow without addition of the main carbohydrate substrate (glucose and maltose, respectively) to the medium, albeit with reduced growth rates and final yields (Biagini et al. 1998). Hence, amino acids
may play a substantial role in energy generation in these organisms. *Giardia* possesses a NAD(P)^+^-depended GDH which is thought to cooperate with alanine aminotransferase (ALT) in the formation of alanine from pyruvate. Like *G. intestinalis*, *S. vortens* also incorporates glutamate from the medium and possesses GDH activity. Hence a similar pathway of energy generation from amino acids may be present in this organism. Malic enzyme activity was also detected in *S. vortens* and, unlike other aforementioned hydrogenosomal enzymes, was not O\(_2\) sensitive. Taking information gained from the current study, as well as that of Millet et al. (2011a), into consideration, hypothesized energy-yielding metabolic processes of *S. vortens* are summarized in Figure 6.4.

Future work should involve in-depth immuno-electron microscopy to determine the type of MDOs that are present in *S. vortens*. Subsequently, isolation of these MDOs by subcellular fractionation should be employed to reveal the metabolic capacity of these organelles. Furthermore, growth of *S. vortens* under varying O\(_2\) tensions in order to determine the growth and metabolic profile of this organism in aerobic and anaerobic environments will yield important information regarding the O\(_2\) range of this pathogen. Collectively, these studies will provide great insight into the metabolic diversity which exists amongst the parasitic diplomonads.

6.6. REFERENCES


Chapter 6: Energy-yielding substrates of *Spironucleus vortens*


ter Kuile BH (1994). Adaptation of the carbon metabolism of Trichomonas vaginalis to the nature and availability of the carbon source. Microbiology 140: 2503-2510


Chapter 6: Energy-yielding substrates of *Spironucleus vortens*


Chapter 7

Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*: an aerotolerant anaerobic diplomonad parasite
CHAPTER 7:
Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*: an aerotolerant anaerobic diplomonad parasite

Williams CF, Cable J, Yarlett N, Aon M & Lloyd D
*Manuscript submitted for peer review*

7.1. ABSTRACT

The aerotolerant anaerobic piscine diplomonad, *Spironucleus vortens*, is able to withstand high fluctuations in O$_2$ tensions during its lifecycle. From its primary microaerobic habitat, the intestinal tract of fish, the parasite is capable of causing extra-intestinal systemic infections. Trophozoites have been isolated from numerous organs as well as head lesions of the host, a highly aerobic environment. During transmission to a new host, *S. vortens* trophozoites have also been documented to survive for prolonged periods in the faeces of the fish host. In the current study, we further investigated the O$_2$ scavenging and antioxidant defence mechanisms which facilitate the survival of *S. vortens* under such oxidizing conditions. Closed O$_2$ electrode measurements revealed that the *S. vortens* ATCC 50386 strain was more O$_2$ tolerant than a freshly isolated *S. vortens* intestinal strain (*Sv1*). This may be explained by the effects of long-term *in vitro* culture, which may result in the loss of some parasite virulence factors. In contrast to the related human diplomonad, *Giardia intestinalis*, RP-HPLC revealed the major non-protein thiols of *S. vortens* to be glutathione (GSH, 776 nmol/ 10$^7$ cells) and H$_2$S. Furthermore, antioxidant proteins of *S. vortens* were assayed enzymatically and revealed that *S. vortens* possesses superoxide dismutase and NADH oxidase (883 and 37.5 nmol/min/mg protein, respectively) but like *G. intestinalis*, lacks catalase and peroxidase activity. Fluorimetry was also employed using fluorescent probes targeted to key intracellular redox components, which allowed visualization of redox dynamics in both untreated living cells and after treatment with inhibitors. H$_2$O$_2$ was produced by *S. vortens* at a rate of 2.85 pmol/min/10$^6$ cells. Metronidazole and the garlic-derived diallyl disulphide (DADS) led to depletion of *S. vortens* intracellular NAD(P)H pools and an increase in H$_2$O$_2$ production. Other garlic-derived compounds completely inhibited O$_2$ consumption by *S. vortens* (ajoene oil), or significantly depleted the intracellular GSH pool of the organism (allyl alcohol and DADS). Hence, antioxidant defence mechanisms of *S. vortens* may provide novel targets for parasite chemotherapy.
7.2. INTRODUCTION

*Spironucleus vortens* is a protozoan fish parasite capable of causing high mortalities in the ornamental aquaculture industry (see review by Williams et al. 2011). The organism primarily inhabits the middle to posterior intestinal tract of the host, a microaerobic environment which contains traces of $O_2$ at concentrations of 33-66 µM (JM Whittamore and RW Wilson pers. com.). *S. vortens* is regarded as an anaerobic organism, containing $O_2$-sensitive enzymes, e.g. pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR) and hydrogenase (see Chapter 6), which play crucial roles in cellular metabolism and redox balance (Horner et al. 1999; Millet et al. 2010). As a result, *S. vortens* rapidly consumes $O_2$ from its immediate surroundings, thus creating its own optimal micro-environment (Millet et al. 2010). During its lifecycle, *S. vortens* trophozoites are able to tolerate high fluctuations in $O_2$ tensions, especially during an extra-intestinal systemic infection. Trophozoites have been isolated from head lesions of fish with hole-in-the-head disease, an environment which is likely to be quite aerobic in comparison to the intestinal tract (Paull & Matthews 2001). Trophozoites are also expelled into the faeces of the host, where a small proportion of parasites are able to survive for more than 36 d outside the host (see Chapter 3). $O_2$ consumption by *S. vortens* does not involve a phosphorylating respiratory chain, as the organism was previously shown to lack cytochromes (Williams et al. in press). The mechanisms employed by *Spironucleus* spp. to detoxify $O_2$ have not been elucidated and may provide novel pathways for chemotherapy.

Redox status plays a key role in cell survival (see review by Trachootham et al. 2008). Indeed, ultradian oscillatory redox mechanisms are conserved in evolutionary diverse cells, from yeasts to cardiomyocytes, and are essential for cellular coherence and survival (Lloyd et al. 2012). Redox cycling of intracellular thiols form the core of rhythmicity in yeast and heart cells (Lloyd et al. 2012). Similarly, thiol-based redox systems are crucial for the success and survival of protozoan parasites (see review by Müller 2004). Intracellular protein and non-protein thiols are the main cellular antioxidants present in protozoan parasites. These thiols play an important role in maintaining redox balance by detoxifying reactive oxygen species (ROS), produced as a result of parasite $O_2$ scavenging and/or the oxidative burst generated by the host immune system (see review by Müller 2004). During this process, thiol groups are cycled between their reduced and oxidised states. This cycling process is mediated by reductases which catalyse the NAD(P)H-dependent reduction of oxidised disulphides back to reduced di-
thiols (see review by Arrick & Nathan 1984). Thioredoxin (Trx) is one example of an almost ubiquitous small protein di-thiol, found in most prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms, and plays a major role in cellular redox balance (Arnér & Holmgren 2000). Likewise, superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase and peroxidase play important roles in superoxide anion (\( \cdot O_2^- \)) detoxification to \( O_2 \) and \( H_2O_2 \) (SOD) and further reduction of \( H_2O_2 \) to \( O_2 \) and \( H_2O \) (catalase and peroxidases) (Müller 2004). Non-protein thiols however differ between organisms. The microaerophilic protozoan parasites *Giardia intestinalis* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*, for instance, both utilize cysteine as their major non-protein thiol (Brown et al. 1993; Ellis et al. 1994). The aerobic malaria parasites *Plasmodium* spp. on the other hand possesses a complete glutathione (GSH) antioxidant system (Müller 2004) and trypanosomes employ the novel trypanothione (Fairlamb et al. 1985). Failure of antioxidant systems lead to accumulation of ROS, causing significant damage to proteins, lipids and DNA, and often triggers cell death (Circu & Aw 2010).

Garlic (*Allium sativum*) and garlic-derived compounds, are effective antimicrobial compounds, which have been employed in herbal medicine for millennia (see review by Harris et al. 2001). Active components of garlic extract, including ajoene and other sulphonated compounds, effectively inhibit *S. vortens* growth (Millet et al. 2011) and have been shown to work in synergy with metronidazole (MTZ), the conventional drug of choice (see Chapter 4). Williams et al. (2012, Chapter 5) demonstrated that administration of garlic-derived compounds inhibited the thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) of *S. vortens* and led to depletion of intracellular non-protein thiols. A similar finding was observed for MTZ (Williams et al. 2012). Hence, the mode of action of novel (i.e. garlic-derivatives) and existing (i.e. MTZ) chemotherapeutics is based on disrupting the intracellular redox balance of *S. vortens*, which eventually leads to cell death (Millet et al. 2011; Williams et al. 2012).

In the current study, the aerotolerant nature of *S. vortens* was examined by characterization of its \( O_2 \) scavenging and antioxidant defence mechanisms. The subsequent roles of the identified intracellular antioxidants were further investigated as novel chemotherapeutic targets. This is of direct relevance in the treatment of Spironucleosis, as MTZ has been banned from use on food fish in Europe and the US (Commission Regulation No. 613/98 1998; FARAD 2010); hence, alternative, non-harmful therapies are urgently needed.
Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*

7.3. MATERIALS & METHODS

7.3.1. Organism and culture

Trophozoites of two *Spironucleus vortens* strains, ATCC 50386 and *Sv1* (isolated from juvenile English-bred angelfish, August 2011, described in Chapter 3), were maintained separately in Keister’s modified TYI-S-33 medium as described in Chapter 2, section 2.2. The trypanosomatid *Crithidia* sp. (obtained from Prof. Nigel Yarlett, Pace University, NY) was cultured in defined media as described by Bacchi et al. (1974) and used as a positive control from the HPLC analysis described below.

7.3.2. Inhibitors

The inhibitors metronidazole (MTZ, Sigma-Aldrich), auranofin (AF, Sigma-Aldrich), allyl alcohol (AA, Sigma-Aldrich), diallyl disulphide (DADS, Sigma-Aldrich) and ajoene (18%, Neem Biotech) were employed to investigate their effects on O\textsubscript{2} consumption and antioxidant defences of *S. vortens*. MTZ is the conventional drug of choice used to treat Spironucleosis, AF specifically inhibits thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) and garlic-derived compounds AA, DADS and ajoene have previously been shown to cause redox imbalance in *S. vortens* (see Williams et al. 2012, Chapter 5).

7.3.3. Oxygen measurements

A Clark O\textsubscript{2} electrode was employed to monitor O\textsubscript{2} consumption by *S. vortens* (ATCC and *Sv1* strains) in a 6 ml capacity closed system. The electrode was securely closed within the reaction vessel via an “O”-ring. O\textsubscript{2} was sensed by an Ag-Pt electrode covered by a gas-permeable Teflon membrane (4 M KCl electrolyte) and recorded by a chart recorder set at 5 mV FSD. All experiments were conducted at room temperature (21 ±1°C). Approximately 10\textsuperscript{6} log-phase *S. vortens* trophozoites were washed 2x in PBS (pH 7.2) and suspended to a total volume of 3 ml in air-saturated PBS within the stirred reaction vessel. Glucose (5 mM) was provided as a respiratory substrate (as described in Chapter 6). The changes in rates of O\textsubscript{2} consumption by both *S. vortens* strains from 290 (air-saturated PBS) to 0 µM O\textsubscript{2} were calculated from linear parts of the slopes (n=3 for each strain). These rates were plotted against the O\textsubscript{2} tension at which the rate of O\textsubscript{2} consumption changed. The maximal rate of O\textsubscript{2} consumption (V\textsubscript{max}), O\textsubscript{2} tension at which O\textsubscript{2} consumption ceased ([O\textsubscript{2}]\textsubscript{V=0}), and upper O\textsubscript{2} tension which was inhibitory to O\textsubscript{2} consumption ([O\textsubscript{2}]\textsubscript{V=i}) were also calculated for both strains. The effects of inhibitors,
MTZ (50 µM), AA, DADS and ajoene (1 mM each) on O$_2$ consumption by the ATCC strain were also analysed (n=2 for each treatment, n=4 for the untreated control).

7.3.4. Reverse-phase HPLC

Reduced thiols were analysed according to the methods of Ellis et al. (1994). Log phase S. vortens trophozoites (approx. 2 x 10$^7$ cells per sample) were washed 2x in PBS (pH 7.2), pelleted and re-suspended in 40 mM HEPPS/NaOH with 2 mM EDTA (pH 8). To assess the effects of inhibitors on the non-protein thiols of S. vortens, some samples (n=2 per treatment) were pre-treated with 50 µM metronidazole (MTZ), 50 µM auranofin (AF), 1 mM allyl alcohol (AA), 1 mM diallyl disulphide (DADS) or 1 mM ajoene (AJ) for 1 h at room temperature. To investigate the presence of trypanothione within S. vortens, some samples (n=2 per treatment) were pre-incubated for 24 h with 5 mM DFMO (difluromethylornithine) and/or [³H]-spermidine (3.25 nmol, 50 µ Ci) in culture medium. Untreated control samples were conducted in triplicate. Thiols were then derivatized with 2 mM monobromobimane (MBB) in absolute ethanol and heated to 70°C for 30 min in a water bath. After cooling on ice, samples were deproteinized with 4 M methanesulphonic acid (pH 1.5, with LiOH) for 15 min on ice. Total protein concentration of each sample was determined at this point by Bradford assay (Bradford 1976) before removing derivatized proteins by centrifugation (10,000 g, 2 min). The supernatant was retained and passed through a 0.45 µm nylon-66 filter and separated by reverse-phase HPLC using a series LC 410 pump (Perkin–Elmer) coupled to a Beckman “Ultrasphere” column (5 µm particle size) with a 20 µl loop. A 30 µl volume of the derivatized thiol samples were injected into the injection port. The protocol consisted of an 84 min discontinuous gradient of solvents A = 0.25% (w/v) D-camphor sulphonate (pH 2.64), and B = 0.25% (w/v) D-camphor sulphonate containing 25% n-propanol. Thiols were eluted using a flow rate of 1 ml/min using: (1) isocratic step at 90% A, 10% B for 20 min, (2) linear gradient to 50% A and B for 40 min, and, (3) isocratic step at 50% A and B for 10 min. Starting conditions were regenerated after 5 min and maintained for 15 min prior to the next injection. The operating pressure was 1,300 psi. Fluorescently derivatized non-protein thiols were detected using an LS-1 fluorescence detector (Perkin-Elmer) fitted with a 1 µl flow cell, using $\lambda_{ex}$ 375 nm and $\lambda_{em}$ 480 nm. MBB derivatized standards, glutathione (GSH), propanethiol, methanethiol, trypanothione and H$_2$S, were prepared in the same way as the cell samples. Incorporation of [³H]-spermidine by S. vortens was investigated by HPLC separation of thiols (as
described) and radiometric detection. Areas under the peaks were determined using b-RAM computer software (IN/US Systems), version 1.62. *Crithidia* sp. was used as a positive control for glutathione and trypanothione with samples prepared as described for *S. vortens*. For *Crithidia* sp., HPLC analysis was conducted using a modified method to that described above, according to Koledin et al. (2002). A Percosil column (Perkin-Elmer, 5 μm particle size) was employed along with solvents A = 0.25% acetic acid (v/v, pH 4.2) and B = 100% methanol (analytical grade). Thiols were eluted using the following gradient: 10 min isocratic 10% B, 15 min linear gradient 18% B, 15 min linear gradient 27% B, 10 min linear gradient 50% B, 10 min linear gradient 100% B, after which the column was returned to 10% B in 5 min, an equilibrated for a further 10 min.

### 7.3.5. Spectrofluorometry

Log phase trophozoites (~10⁷ cells/ml) were washed 2x in PBS and re-suspended in 1 ml PBS. A 100 μl volume of this cell suspension was then introduced into a glass cuvette containing 1.5 ml PBS and 0.4 ml Amplex Red (kit from Invitrogen) in order to monitor H₂O₂ production by the organism. Oxidation of GSH pools were examined by pre-incubating cells for 30 min with 50 μM monochlorobimane (MCB) and washing 3x with PBS. Changes in levels of reduced GSH were monitored indirectly via glutathione S-bimane, GSB, a fluorescent adduct formed after the reversible reaction between GSH and MCB (catalyzed by glutathione S-transferase, GST; Cortassa et al. 2004). MCB treated cells (100 μl) were inoculated into another cuvette containing 1.8 ml PBS. A spectrofluorometer (Photon Technology International) was used to record the following emission wavelengths from each cell suspension simultaneously, according to Aon et al. (2012), NAD(P)H autofluorescence ($\lambda_{ex}$ 340 nm, $\lambda_{em}$ 450 nm), oxidised flavin (FAD) autofluorescence ($\lambda_{ex}$ 480 nm, $\lambda_{em}$ 530 nm), cell path length (1 cm, 90° side scatter, $\lambda_{ex}$ 520 nm, $\lambda_{em}$ 585 nm), H₂O₂ emission ($\lambda_{ex}$ 530 nm, $\lambda_{em}$ 590 nm) and GSH ($\lambda_{ex}$ 390 nm, $\lambda_{em}$ 480 nm). Background readings were established for each cuvette before addition of cells. Changes in the emission of each probe within the organism was monitored over time after addition of 5 mM glutamate and malate as a metabolic substrate (as described in Chapter 6) and inhibitors; 50 μM MTZ, 50 μM AF, 1 mM AA, 1 mM DADS or 1 mM ajoene.

### 7.3.6. Enzyme assays

Approx. 2 x 10⁷ cells were washed 2x in PBS (pH 7.2), re-suspended in 20 mM EDTA and 0.1% (v/v) Triton X-100 (0.5 ml final volume) and left to stand for 5-10 min
at room temperature. Insoluble material was then removed by centrifugation (4°C). Protein content of the resulting supernatant was quantified by Bradford assay (Bradford 1976), as outlined in Chapter 2, section 2.4, and the same protein extract used for subsequent enzyme assays. All assays were conducted at room temperature (21±1°C) with a minimum of 2 replicates per assay. A spectrophotometer (Jedway 6300) was employed to measure the change in absorbance over a 5 min period, with readings recorded at 30 s intervals, after addition of the *S. vortens* protein extract (approx. 1 mg/ml stock) or purified enzyme to the following reaction mixtures:

7.3.6.1. **NADH oxidase activity (EC: 1.6.3.1):** 50 mM potassium phosphate, 0.07 mM NADH, 0.1 mM FAD and 100 µl *S. vortens* crude protein extract in a total reaction volume of 1.5 ml. The decrease in NADH absorbance was recorded at 340 nm and converted into the concentration rate of change using a molar extinction coefficient of 6.22 x 10³ M⁻¹ cm⁻¹ (Reusch & Burger 1974).

7.3.6.2. **Superoxide dismutase (SOD, EC: 1.15.1.1) activity:** *S. vortens* SOD activity was measured indirectly via the SOD determination kit (Sigma-Aldrich) using a colorimetric method. Briefly, WST-1 (2-(4-iodophenyl)-3-(4-nitrophrenyl)-5-(2, 4-disulphophenyl)-2H-tetrazolium, monosodium salt) produced a formazan product upon reduction with a superoxide anion (2O₂⁻). This rate of reduction is linearly related to xanthine oxidase activity and is inhibited by SOD. Hence, the 50% inhibition of SOD was determined by following the decrease in WST-1 formazan at 440 nm (molar extinction coefficient = 37 x 10³ M⁻¹ cm⁻¹). A 20 µl volume of *S. vortens* protein extract (or purified enzyme, positive control) was added to the reaction mixture, resulting in a 240 µl reaction volume.

7.3.6.3. **Catalase activity (EC: 1.11.1.6):** 50 mM potassium phosphate and 3% (v/v) hydrogen peroxide. The presence of catalase was confirmed by the appearance of O₂ bubbles immediately after addition of the enzyme (10 U/ml) or *S. vortens* crude protein extract (100 µl; McLeod & Gordon 1923). The total volume of the reaction was 650 µl.

7.3.6.4. **Peroxidase activity (EC: 1.11.1.7):** 100 mM K-phosphate buffer (pH 6 using KOH), 0.5% (w/v) H₂O₂ and 5% (w/v) pyrogallol. The reaction was initiated with 100 µl *S. vortens* crude protein extract in a total reaction volume of 1.5 ml (Chance & Maehly 1955).
7.3.6.5. Calculation of enzymatic rates. Enzymatic rates were calculated according to Beer’s Law:

\[ \Delta A = e c l \]

Where, \( \Delta A \) is the measured absorbance change (\( \Delta \)absorbance/min), \( e \) is the molar extinction coefficient, \( l \) is the path length (1 cm) and \( c \) is the molar concentration (moles/L).

7.3.7. Statistical analysis

Statistical differences between treatment groups were assessed using T-tests in Minitab (Version 16) using normally distributed data with equal variance.

7.4. RESULTS

Consumption of O\(_2\) differs between two *Spironucleus vortens* strains (ATCC and Sv1) and is completely inhibited by the garlic-derived compound, ajoene. The major cellular antioxidants of *S. vortens* are GSH and H\(_2\)S; SOD and NADH oxidase are the predominant protective enzymes. Intracellular GSH levels are significantly depleted by AF and the garlic-derived AA and DADS.

7.4.1. Oxygen consumption by *S. vortens*

Changes in rates of O\(_2\) consumption by *S. vortens* ATCC and Sv1 strains introduced into air-saturated PBS (290 µM O\(_2\)) in a closed reaction vessel are illustrated in Fig. 7.1. Both strains consumed O\(_2\) at similar maximal rates (\( V_{\text{max}} \)) of 27.3 and 24.2 nmol/min/10\(^7\) cells, respectively. Tolerance to O\(_2\), however, was different between the two strains. The O\(_2\) tensions at which O\(_2\) consumption ceased ([O\(_2\)]\( V=0 \)) was significantly different between strains (T-test, \( t=5.46, p=0.005 \)), with \( V=0 \) occurring at higher [O\(_2\)] for the ATCC strain (19 µM O\(_2\)) than the Sv1 strain (5 µM O\(_2\)). Similarly, the upper O\(_2\) tension which led to inhibition of O\(_2\) consumption by the organisms ([O\(_2\)]\( V=i \)) was significantly different between strains (T-test, \( t = 3.97, p=0.017 \)). O\(_2\) consumption by the Sv1 strain was inhibited at 174.8 µM O\(_2\), whilst no inhibition of O\(_2\) consumption by the ATCC strain was observed up to the highest O\(_2\) tension recorded. Hence, for the ATCC strain, [O\(_2\)]\( V=i \) lies above 237.8 µM O\(_2\) (Table 7.1). Of the inhibitors tested, the garlic-derived ajoene oil (1 mM) had the greatest effect on O\(_2\) consumption by *S. vortens* (ATCC strain only tested), reducing this rate by 100% of the control (uninhibited) value.
DADS (1 mM) also reduced the rate of O$_2$ consumption by *S. vortens* to 63.4% of the control value (Fig. 7.2).

**Table 7.1.** O$_2$ consumption by *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC and *SvI* strains). The maximal rate of O$_2$ consumption by *S. vortens* ($V_{max}$) strains are given as well as the O$_2$ tensions at which the rate of O$_2$ consumption by *S. vortens* strains is equal to zero ([O$_2$]$_{V=0}$) and is inhibited ([O$_2$]$_{V=i}$) at high [O$_2$], with ± standard deviation (SD) values (n=3). Values for which significant difference between the two *S. vortens* strains was observed is indicated with an asterisk (T-test, p<0.05).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>Spironucleus vortens</em> strain</th>
<th>$V_{max}$ (nmol/ min/ 10$^7$ cells)</th>
<th>[O$<em>2$]$</em>{V=0}$ (µM)*</th>
<th>[O$<em>2$]$</em>{V=i}$ (µM)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>S. vortens</em> ATCC</td>
<td>27.3 ±9.8</td>
<td>19.0 ±1.6</td>
<td>&gt;237.8 ±26.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>S. vortens</em> <em>SvI</em></td>
<td>24.2 ±14.1</td>
<td>5.1 ±4.0</td>
<td>174.8 ±7.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 7.1.** Glucose (5 mM)-supported O$_2$ consumption rates by whole cell suspensions of *Spironucleus vortens* ATCC and *SvI* strains in air-saturated PBS. The vertical line shows the upper O$_2$ tension at which the rate of O$_2$ consumption (V) by *S. vortens* *SvI* is inhibited ([O$_2$]$_{V=i}$). The dotted and continuous arrows indicate the O$_2$ tensions at which V=0 ([O$_2$]$_{V=0}$) for *S. vortens* ATCC and *SvI* strains, respectively. Rates are representative of 3 replicates for each strain.
Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*

7.4.2. *S. vortens* non-protein thiol analysis

Reverse-phase HPLC analysis revealed that the major non-protein thiol of *S. vortens* was GSH (retention time = 40 min, Fig. 7.3a). *S. vortens* GSH content was calculated as 767 (±400 SD) nmol/10^7 cells. A small peak corresponding to H_2S was also identified on the *S. vortens* HPLC chromatogram (retention time = 54 min, Fig. 7.3a). The remaining peaks did not correspond to any of the other standards that were tested (i.e. methanethiol and propanethiol) and therefore remain unidentified. Unlike the positive control, *Crithidia* sp. (Fig. 7.3b), *S. vortens* did not incorporate[^H]-spermidine and growth was not inhibited by DFMO, hence *S. vortens* does not contain trypanothione. GSH production by *S. vortens* was significantly inhibited after 1 h incubation with AF, AA and DADS (T-test, t>2.77, p<0.05) to 23.8 (±14.33)%%, 23.8 (±4.59)% and 39.7

---

*Fig. 7.2.* Percentage inhibition of O_2 consumption rate by *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) by diallyl disulphide (DADS, n=2) and ajoene oil (18%, n=2) as compared to the glucose (10 mM)-supported control O_2 consumption rate (n=4).
Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*

(±0.038)% of the control value, respectively (Fig. 7.4). MTZ and ajoene also reduced *S. vortens* GSH levels to 55.2 (±0.4)% and 39.2 (±26.4)% of the control value, respectively, however the degree of inhibition was not significantly different from the untreated control value (T-test, t<2.77, p>0.05).

![Figure 7.3](image.png)

**Fig. 7.3.** Reverse-phase HPLC chromatograms of monobromobimane-derivatized non-protein thiols detected by fluorescence. Non-protein thiols of *Spironucleus vortens* ATCC strain (a). The major peak at 40 min and minor peak at 54 min correspond to glutathione (GSH) and H$_2$S, respectively. Non-protein thiols of *Crithidia* sp. (b). Region 3 (23.4 min) = GSH, region 10 (50.2 min) = glutathionylspermidine, region 11 (56.2 min) = trypanothione, region 9 (47.0 min) = H$_2$S. The remaining peaks in (a) and (b) are unidentified thiols.
7.4.3. Effects of inhibitors on *S. vortens* redox dynamics

Spectrofluorimetry was employed to investigate the immediate effects of inhibitors on the redox dynamics of *S. vortens*. Untreated cells produced H$_2$O$_2$ at a rate of 2.85 pmol/min/10$^6$ cells. MTZ led to immediate oxidation of the intracellular NAD(P)H pool (ca. -25%) and increase in H$_2$O$_2$ (ca. +31% of endogenous rates) released by the organism (Fig. 7.5a). AF decreased NAD(P)H and GSH levels (ca. -7% after 250 s, Fig. 7.5b). The only garlic-derived compound tested which had an immediate effect on the redox dynamics of *S. vortens* was DADS, causing an increase in H$_2$O$_2$ (ca. +125% of endogenous rates) production by the organism, coupled with slight oxidation of the NAD(P)H and GSH pools (ca. -2% after 250 s) and immediate contraction of cell size (increase in side scatter to 6%, Fig. 7.5c).

![Figure 7.4](image_url)

**Fig. 7.4.** Depletion of *S. vortens* glutathione (GSH) by 50 µM metronidazole (MTZ), 50 µM auranofin (AF), 1 mM allyl alcohol (AA), 1 mM diallyl disulphide (DADS) and 1 mM ajoene. Error bars show standard deviation of n=4 replicates for the control and n=2 replicates for the different treatments. Asterisks indicate significant reduction in GSH by AF, AA and DADS as compared to control levels (T-test, p<0.05).
7.4.4. Antioxidant enzymes of *S. vortens*

Both SOD and NADH oxidase activity were detected enzymatically in *S. vortens* cell-free extracts, at rates of 883 (±104) and 37.5 (±13) nmol/min/mg protein, respectively. No catalase or peroxidase activity was detected.

7.5. DISCUSSION

The aerotolerant nature of *Spironucleus vortens*, an “anaerobic” protozoan parasite, is reflected in its apparent high tolerance towards O$_2$. Consumption of O$_2$ by both the ATCC and *Sv1* strains was maximal at elevated O$_2$ tensions (ca. 150-250 µM O$_2$) and commenced at a rate of ca. 25 nmol/min/10$^7$ cells. This rate of O$_2$ consumption is comparable to that obtained previously for *S. vortens* by Millet et al. (2010; 62 nmol/min/10$^7$ cells). Interestingly, differences were observed between the [O$_2$]$_{V=0}$ and [O$_2$]$_{V=i}$ values of the ATCC and *Sv1* strains. The ATCC strain displayed elevated tolerance towards O$_2$, indicated by lack of inhibition to O$_2$ consumption at near air-saturated levels. Furthermore, the rate of detectable O$_2$ consumption reached zero at a higher O$_2$ tension for the ATCC strain than for the *Sv1* strain. These differences could be the result of prolonged *in vitro* cultivation of the ATCC strain (having been in culture for 22 years since 1991), resulting in decreased susceptibility to O$_2$. Loss of characteristic traits on prolonged laboratory culture has been documented previously, e.g. for *Leishmania* (see Moreira et al. 2012) and *Acanthamoeba* (see Köehsler et al. 2009) virulence. Long-term *in vitro* cultivation of *Acanthamoeba* results in reduced capacity for encystment (Köehsler et al. 2008), lowered peroxidase and protease activity (Mazur & Hadaś 1994) and increased susceptibility to drugs (Hughes et al. 2003).

Reproducible determination of K$_m$ and K$_i$ O$_2$ values for *S. vortens* have been hampered due to an apparent drift in O$_2$ consumption rates, which occurs during the open electrode experiments (CFW pers. obs.; Millet et al. 2009). Such experiments require cell suspensions to be stirred vigorously for prolonged periods (up to 4 h) with increasing O$_2$ tension. This undoubtedly leads to damage of cells and misleading K$_m$ and K$_i$ values. Based on the results presented here, it may be hypothesised that *S. vortens* is likely to have a higher threshold of inhibition by O$_2$ (K$_i$), and decreased affinity for O$_2$ (K$_m$) compared to other diplomonads, e.g. *Hexamita inflata* K$_m$O$_2$ = 13 µM, K$_i$O$_2$ = 100 µM; *Giardia intestinalis* K$_m$O$_2$ = 6.4 µM, K$_i$O$_2$ = 80 µM (Biagini et al. 1997).
Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*

(a) 50 μM MTZ

(b) 50 μM AF

(c) 1 mM DADS
Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*

Fig. 7.5. The effect of (a) 50 µM metronidazole (MTZ), (b) 50 µM auranofin (AF) and (c) 1 mM diallyl disulphide (DADS) on the intracellular NAD(P)H, FAD, glutathione (GSH), H$_2$O$_2$ production and cell size (side scatter) of washed whole cell suspensions of *Spironucleus vortens* in PBS (n=2 per treatment).

The high tolerance of *S. vortens* towards O$_2$ can be explained by its surprisingly sophisticated antioxidant defence system. Glutathione (GSH) was found to be the major non-protein thiol of *S. vortens*. This is in contrast to other anaerobic/microaerophilic protozoan parasites, including *G. intestinalis* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*, which utilize cysteine, a low molecular weight thiol (Brown et al. 1993; Ellis et al. 1994). Hence, in terms of its non-protein thiols, *S. vortens* more closely resembles aerobic parasites, such as *Plasmodium* spp. and trypanosomes, which also utilize GSH (Arrick et al. 1981; Müller 2004). A small peak which corresponded to the retention time of H$_2$S was also observed in the HPLC chromatogram. This is consistent with the pungent H$_2$S smell which is present in 2-3 d old *S. vortens* cultures (CFW, pers. obs.). H$_2$S has been documented to play important roles in redox metabolism and cell signalling (Banerjee 2011); however a possible function in parasitic protozoa has not been characterized.

The diversity in utilization of different protein and non-protein thiols by protozoa is summarized in Table 7.2. Like *G. intestinalis* (see Brown et al. 1995, 1996a), *S. vortens* was also found to exhibit superoxide dismutase (SOD) and NADH oxidase activities, but lacked catalase and peroxidase. Hence, the mechanism by which *S. vortens* detoxifies H$_2$O$_2$ remains undetermined. It is likely to be mostly released from the cell, with extracellular H$_2$O$_2$ produced at a rate of 2.85 pmol/min/10$^6$ cells, which is comparable to that of *T. vaginalis* (33.5 pmol/min/mg protein, Chapman et al. 1999). A small proportion of the peroxide formed, however, is likely to be converted to the highly damaging hydroxyl radical, OH$^-$, via the Fenton reaction (Lloyd et al. 1997). At this point OH$^-$ may be detoxified by GSH resulting in its reduction to H$_2$O (Yadav & Mishra 2013). It has been documented that *S. barkhanus* also possesses a gene encoding peroxiredoxin (Coombs et al. 2004). Peroxiredoxins are an antioxidant family which, like peroxidases, decompose H$_2$O$_2$ to H$_2$O, using thioredoxin as a cofactor (see review by McGonigle et al. 1998; Stanley et al. 2011). In addition, a bacterial-derived gene encoding the iron protein, rubrerythrin, has been identified in *S. salmonicida* (see Andersson et al. 2007). The physiological role(s) of rubrerythrins have not yet been validated; however its function is again associated with peroxidase activity (Sztukowska et al. 2002).
Table 7.2. Documented intracellular antioxidants of Spironucleus (Spi), Hexamita (Hex), Giardia (Gia), Trichomonas (Tri), Entamoeba (Ent), Trypanosomes (Try) and Plasmodium (Pla). For specific species names, see reference list below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antioxidant</th>
<th>Spi</th>
<th>Hex</th>
<th>Gia</th>
<th>Tri</th>
<th>Ent</th>
<th>Try</th>
<th>Pla</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H₂S</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cysteine</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+6</td>
<td></td>
<td>+13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanethiol</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>+8</td>
<td></td>
<td>+13</td>
<td></td>
<td>+17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propanethiol</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+13</td>
<td></td>
<td>+16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutathione</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+7</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>-17</td>
<td>+24</td>
<td>+32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trypanothione</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thioredoxin</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavodiiron protein</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD(P)H oxidase</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+7</td>
<td></td>
<td>+10</td>
<td></td>
<td>+14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superoxide dismutase</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+7</td>
<td></td>
<td>-11</td>
<td>+13</td>
<td>+17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalase</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>-11</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>-17</td>
<td>-28</td>
<td>-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peroxidase</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>-11</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+21</td>
<td>+29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peroxiredoxin</td>
<td>+3</td>
<td></td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>+4</td>
<td></td>
<td>+22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutaredoxin</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td></td>
<td>+12</td>
<td>-12</td>
<td>-12</td>
<td>+31</td>
<td>+35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubrerythrin†</td>
<td>+5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interestingly, both peroxiredoxin and rubrerythrin localize to the hydrogenosomes of *T. vaginalis* (see Pütz et al. 2005). Hydrogenosomes are double-membraned mitochondrial-derived organelles (MDOs) which have undergone reductive evolution as a result of adaptation to parasitism (see review by Shiflett & Johnson 2010). They have lost cytochrome-mediated oxidative phosphorylation functions, but have retained some characteristics of mitochondria, e.g. ATP generation via substrate-level phosphorylation and iron-sulphur cluster assembly of proteins. These organelles also produce H₂ via an electron transport chain resulting from the donation of electrons from the bacterial-derived pyruvate:ferredoxin oxidoreductase (PFOR) to hydrogenase (see review by Shiflett & Johnson 2010). It has been proposed that in contrast to their diplomonad relatives, *Giardia* spp., *S. vortens* (see Millet et al. 2009) and *S. salmonicida* (see Jelström-Hultqvist 2012) also possess hydrogenosomes (Williams et al. in press). *Giardia* spp. contain further reduced MDOs called mitosomes (see review by Tachy & Doležal 2011). The only known function of these organelles is Fe-S cluster assembly. One of the proteins present in the *Giardia* mitosome is glutaredoxin, an antioxidant enzyme which functions in a similar way to peroxiredoxins by converting H₂O₂ to H₂O, utilizing GSH as a cofactor (Rada et al. 2009). This contradicts previous studies (Brown et al. 1993) which claimed that *Giardia* does not contain GSH. However, it is likely that GSH is only present at low levels in *Giardia*, and hence be undetectable by HPLC (Rada et al. 2009). No MDO-targeted glutaredoxin genes have been found in the genome sequence of *S. salmonicida* (see Jelström-Hultqvist 2012). Hence, as in *T. vaginalis*, peroxiredoxins and rubrerythrins may play a role in detoxifying H₂O₂ in *S. vortens*, however their functionality and subcellular locations in this organism should be further investigated. Genes coding for another bacterial-derived antioxidant enzyme, a flavodiiron protein (FDI), have been documented in a number of anaerobic/microaerophilic protozoa, including *T. vaginalis, E. histolytica, G. intestinalis* and *S. barkhanus* (see DiMatteo et al. 2008). In *G. intestinalis* the FDI has high O₂ reductase activity (converting O₂ to H₂O), as well high affinity for O₂. Its primary purpose has been linked to O₂ scavenging, thus facilitating survival of the parasite in the microaerobic environment of the small intestine (*ca.* 60 µM O₂; DiMatteo et al. 2008). A hypothesized illustration of oxygen detoxification mechanisms in *S. vortens* is proposed in Figure 7.6.

As previously documented (Williams et al. 2012, Chapter 5), the inhibitors employed in the current study caused redox imbalance in *S. vortens*. The garlic-derived ajoene oil caused complete inhibition of O₂ scavenging by *S. vortens*, perhaps indicating
inhibition of the terminal O₂ reductase, FDI protein. Metronidazole (MTZ) gave immediate oxidation of the intracellular NAD(P)H pool of *S. vortens*. This is consistent with the previously documented mode of action of MTZ, whereby reductive activation of the MTZ pro-drug is facilitated by thioredoxin reductase (TrxR), which sources its reducing power from NADPH (Leitsch et al. 2007). NAD(P)H levels were also depleted as a result of auranofin (AF) and DADS treatment, albeit to a lesser extent than MTZ. This may be the result of the need for more reducing power within the cells to combat the oxidative stress caused by inhibition of TrxR (by AF: Aon et al. 2012) and depletion of non-protein thiols (by DADS: Williams et al. 2012). Indeed, DADS caused an immediate depletion of GSH which reached 40% of untreated levels after 1 h incubation. Similarly, MTZ and AF also caused depletion of GSH pools, significantly so in the case of AF after 1 h incubation. This is probably a consequence of the inhibition of the Trx antioxidant system, resulting in overwhelming reliance on the GSH system for detoxification of ROS. The GSH and Trx systems have been shown previously to work in concert in cardiomyocytes (Aon et al. 2012), hence it seems likely that a similar scenario is present in *S. vortens*. It is also known that treatment of *S. vortens* with MTZ, and especially DADS, resulted in an increase in H₂O₂ production by the organism, which implies inhibition of a peroxidase-like antioxidant, e.g. peroxiredoxin. A change in cellular morphology was observed as a result of this oxidative stress, with DADS-treated cells contracting in size.

In conclusion, the array of antioxidants documented here to be present within *S. vortens* explains the capacity of this anaerobe to thrive in environments of fluctuating O₂ tensions during its life cycle. Differences in susceptibility of the ATCC curated and freshly isolated *Sv1* strains to O₂ requires further biochemical elucidation, not least because this may reveal differences in strain pathogenicity. The assumed anaerobic nature of *S. vortens* should also be further investigated, with detectable O₂ consumption appearing to cease at microaerobic O₂ tensions. Like *G. intestinalis* (see Lloyd et al. 2000) and *T. vaginalis* (see Paget & Lloyd 1990), *S. vortens* may require low concentrations of O₂ for intra- and/or extra-cellular signalling processes. This, together with the fact that H₂ production in *S. vortens* has previously been documented to commence at 33 μM O₂ (Millet et al. 2010), hints at the potential microaerophilic nature of this parasite. Finally, it is important to further characterise the unusual bacterial-derived antioxidants previously documented to be encoded in the genomes of *Spironucleus* spp. For instance, rubrerythrin and FDI protein are suggested here to be
novel targets for chemotherapy by garlic-derived compounds. The current study provides further evidence that the mode of action of both garlic-derivatives and MTZ is based on disrupted intracellular redox balance, leading to oxidative stress in \textit{S. vortens}, the result of which is lethal to the organism (Millet et al. 2011; Williams et al. 2012). Hence, maintaining intracellular redox balance is of paramount importance to the overall health of \textit{S. vortens}, and provides novel chemotherapeutic targets, which require further investigation.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{fig7_6.png}
\caption{Hypothesised antioxidant defence mechanisms of \textit{Spironucleus vortens}, adapted from Biagini et al. (1997). FDI, flavodiiron protein; NO, NADH oxidase; SOD, superoxide dismutase; Trx(SH)$_2$, reduced thioredoxin; TrxS$_2$, oxidized thioredoxin; TrxR, thioredoxin reductase; Prx, peroxiredoxin; RBR, rubrerythrin (function undetermined); HWR, Haber-Weiss reaction; FR, Fenton reaction; GSH, reduced glutathione; GSSG, oxidized glutathione; GSR, glutathione reductase.}
\end{figure}
7.6. REFERENCES


Aon MA, Stanley BA, Sivakumaran V, Kembro JM, O’Rourke B, Paolocci N, Cortassa S (2012). Glutathione/thioredoxin systems modulate mitochondrial H$_2$O$_2$ emission: an experimental-computational study. JGP 139: 479-491


Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*


Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*


163


Chapter 7: Antioxidant defences of *Spironucleus vortens*


Wilkinson SR, Meyer DJ, Taylor MC, Bromley EV, Miles MA, Kelly JM (2002). The *Trypanosoma cruzi* enzyme TcGPXI is a glycosomal peroxidase and can be linked to trypanothione reduction by glutathione or tryparedoxin. J Biol Chem 277: 17062-17071


Chapter 8

General discussion
CHAPTER 8: GENERAL DISCUSSION

This study has improved our understanding of the biology of *Spironucleus vortens* in relation to its lifecycle, biochemistry and chemotherapy. The fact that no *S. vortens* cysts were observed *in vitro* or *in vivo* along with the prolonged survival of *S. vortens* trophozoites in angelfish faeces, suggests that transmission of this parasite is facilitated by a trophozoite rather than a cyst stage (Chapter 3). Of course, this does not completely rule out the possibility of an encysted *S. vortens* stage, which may be required for survival in water following fragmentation of the faecal matter. Indeed, faecal matter is likely to confer physical protection to trophozoites, being densely populated with microbial fauna which contribute to O₂ scavenging and maintenance of an anaerobic-microaerobic environment (Piedecausa et al. 2012). Faecal matter also provides a rich supply of growth factors as well as major carbon and nitrogen sources (carbohydrates and amino acids). These latter biomolecules are further demonstrated here to be carbon and energy-yielding substrates for *S. vortens* (Chapter 6). Collectively, this information may be applied directly to fish farms to more efficiently control *S. vortens* outbreaks. The rarity, or perhaps complete absence, of an encysted stage in *S. vortens* implies that basic prevention methods, such as the use of disinfectants and an efficient filtration system to remove faecal debris from aquaria, should greatly reduce the incidence of parasite transmission.

During its life cycle, *S. vortens* is likely to experience fluctuations in both O₂ tensions and nutrient availability. Previously Millet et al. (2011a) commented on the high proteolytic capacity of *S. vortens* as well as the ability of this parasite to utilize amino acid substrates as well as carbohydrates. Monosaccharides, including glucose, and free amino acids are likely to be plentiful in the intestinal tract, however, during a systemic infection the parasite may have to rely heavily on its proteolytic activity in order to obtain its energy-yielding amino acid substrates. One such substrate was demonstrated here to be glutamate, which produces potential energy in the form of NAD(P)H in *S. vortens* (Chapter 6). Glucose is also a major substrate of this organism. The energy generated from its putative fermentative pathways, documented here, is likely to contribute to O₂ consumption and detoxification. Glutamate is also directly involved in the antioxidant defences of *S. vortens*, being a major component of glutathione, the major non-protein thiol of this organism. It was also observed that *S. vortens* can grow in the absence of
supplemental glucose; hence under periods of glucose-deficiency, the organism is able to depend on amino acid substrates, such as glutamate, alone.

$O_2$ levels in the intestinal tract, the primary habitat of *S. vortens*, range from 33-66 $\mu$M (JM Whittamore and RW Wilson pers. com.). During a systemic infection, however, *S. vortens* trophozoites have been recovered from open head lesions of infected fish (Paull & Matthews 2001), an environment which is likely to approach air-saturated levels (290 $\mu$M $O_2$). $O_2$ scavenging by a recently isolated strain of *S. vortens* (*Sv1*) is inhibited at concentrations in excess of 170 $\mu$M $O_2$, whereas that of the ATCC strain remains active at air-saturated levels, thus exhibiting a high degree of tolerance for $O_2$ (Chapter 7). Differences in the susceptibility of the new *Sv1* and ATCC strains to metronidazole were also observed (Chapter 4). Metronidazole-resistant *Giardia intestinalis* strains have been observed to have decreased affinity for $O_2$, which results in elevated intracellular $O_2$ tensions (Ellis et al. 1992). As a result, futile cycling of metronidazole ensues, whereby the metronidazole nitroradical metabolites are re-oxidized to the inactive parent compound (Lloyd & Pedersen 1985). A similar scenario may also be present in the new *Sv1* isolate which is less susceptible than the ATCC strain to metronidazole, as observed during this study. Although the *Sv1* isolate is more susceptible to $O_2$ at elevated tensions, the rates of $O_2$ consumption by this strain are generally lower as compared to the ATCC strain as $O_2$ tensions decrease from air saturated levels. This hints towards the possibility of there being differences in intracellular $O_2$ tensions between the two strains, however, this claim requires further investigation.

The high tolerance of *S. vortens* towards $O_2$ is reflected in its unusually sophisticated antioxidant defence system, whereby glutathione is the major non-protein thiol (Chapter 7). Microaerophilic protozoa, such as *Giardia* and *Trichomonas*, usually utilize cysteine as their major non-protein antioxidant. Hence, *S. vortens* more closely resembles aerobic protists such as *Plasmodium* and trypanosomes. The glutathione and thioredoxin antioxidant systems of *S. vortens* are shown here to be paramount for normal cellular function and viability. Disruption of intracellular redox balance by depletion of glutathione (Chapter 7) and inhibition of thioredoxin reductase (TrxR) by metronidazole and garlic-derivatives leads to oxidative stress (Chapter 5). This in turn results in irreversible damage to the cell, leading to changes in cellular morphology, growth inhibition, reduced motility and eventually cell death. Hence, maintaining a healthy redox balance is vital in *S. vortens*, and its disruption can lead to disastrous consequences.
Oxygen is also likely to play a key role in the antimicrobial activity of garlic-derived compounds. The eventual fate of garlic-derivatives is to be oxidized to inert forms. The different experiments employed in Chapters 5, 6 and 7 were conducted under different \( O_2 \) tensions. Ajoene was found to be the most effective of the garlic compounds tested against \( S. vortens \). This may be because ajoene is already partially oxidized, and thus would be slower to react with air than a compound which possesses no S-O bonds (e.g. diallyl disulphide). This is directly related to the mode of action of garlic derivatives, whereby most of the chemistry involves a reaction between a protein cysteine sulphur and an un-oxidized sulphur of the garlic compound, thereby forming a new S-S bond (Block 2010). For example, in the case of the reaction between glutathione (GSH) and ajoene (A-S-(O)-S-A\(^1\)):

\[
\text{GSH} + \text{A-S-(O)-S-A}^1 \rightarrow \text{GS-S-A}^1 + \text{A-SOH}
\]

Hence, these mechanisms go some way to explain the depletion of intracellular thiols and inhibition of other antioxidant enzymes which possess a disulphide at their active site, including TrxR (Arnér & Holmgren 2000; Jacob et al. 2006).

Due to restrictions on the use of metronidazole on fish farms, garlic-derived compounds are shown here to be viable alternatives in the treatment and/or prevention of \( Spironucleus \) in fish. In particular, ajoene is a possible candidate to replace metronidazole in the treatment of Spironucleosis by incorporation into fish feed as a nutritional supplement as demonstrated in Chapter 4. Indeed, garlic extracts are already incorporated into some fish feeds, at a concentration of 1-2% (Millet et al. 2011b). The concentration of active garlic compounds, such as allicin, parent compound of ajoene, was undetectable in these commercially available preparations (Freeman & Kodera 1995). Hence, the antimicrobial efficacy of current commercially available garlic-supplemented fish food is questionable. Addition of ajoene to fish feed at an equivalent concentration would exert significantly greater antiparasitic activity and have an extended nutritional and antimicrobial shelf life, as compared to allicin, due to its increased stability (Naznin et al. 2008). Indeed, global fish feed demands reached 3.45 million tonnes in 2010, with a revenue of 1,331 million Euros (Huntington 2004); therefore an ajoene-supplemented fish food product with demonstrated antimicrobial efficacy is likely to be of great commercial interest. This would be favoured over a combination of ajoene and metronidazole, demonstrated in Chapter 4 to have synergistic activity, due to restrictions on the
administration of metronidazole to food fish (Commission Regulation No. 613/98 1998; FARAD 2010); hence any supplement containing metronidazole would be limited to ornamental fish alone. Further work should be conducted to assess the inhibitory effect of ajoene against other *Spironucleus* spp., such as *S. salmonicida*, which causes significant mortalities in salmon and trout (Williams et al. 2011), and also *S. meleagridis*, which is the major disease affecting farm-reared game birds (Cooper et al. 2004). If effective, administration of ajoene could be extended to supplement other animal feed, thus increasing its commercial potential. Future work should also focus on the potential application of ajoene as a complementary therapy in a clinical setting to treat cases of metronidazole-resistant parasites such as *Giardia* and *Trichomonas*. Garlic extracts have already proved promising for eliminating these pathogens *in vitro* with a commercial preparation of diallyl trisulphide (Dasuansu) also being administered as a herbal remedy to treat trichomoniasis in infected individuals (see review by Harris et al. 2001).

Unfortunately, the maximum concentration of ajoene which could be orally administered to angelfish during this study was 0.5% (v/w), which was not by itself enough to significantly reduce *S. vortens* infection in angelfish (Chapter 4). A higher concentration of this ajoene oil was not palatable to the fish. This may be because of the presence of polysulphides and vinyl dithiins, found to be contaminants in the ajoene oil, which are likely to produce a pungent flavour. Future work should focus on formulating a more pure ajoene extract to enhance the palatability of the oral treatment. The robust non-invasive model developed during this study for estimation of intestinal colonization by *S. vortens* (Chapter 3) is ideally suited for determining the efficacy of other chemotherapeutics.

The success of *S. vortens* as a parasite is reflected in its sophisticated antioxidant defence mechanisms and versatile metabolism which facilitates its survival during extra-intestinal systemic infection and transmission to a new host. Biological insights into the mechanism of action of new and existing chemotherapeutics against *S. vortens* highlights the importance of cellular redox balance in *S. vortens* provides a key route of parasite chemotherapy. Identification of other non-protein thiols present in *S. vortens* may reveal other novel antioxidants and thereby chemotherapeutic avenues. Completion of the genome sequence of *S. vortens* will allow further bioinformatic investigation into these novel targets for chemotherapy and provide greater insights into the biology of this pathogen.
REFERENCES


APPENDIX

APPENDIX I

*Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth curves (raw data from Chapter 4).

*Fig. I.* Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations of metronidazole (0-9 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and at 55 h for all metronidazole concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. II. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations of ajoene (0-640 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and at 84 h for all ajoene concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. III. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations of diallyl disulphide (DADS, 0-640 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and at 58 h for all DADS concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. IV. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations of allicin (0-640 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control), 55 h for 320 µg/ml allicin and 90 h for all other allicin concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Appendix I: *Spironucleus vortens* ATCC growth curves

Fig. V. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations of Z-ajoene (0-640 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 64 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 94 h for all Z-ajoene concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. VI. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations of allyl alcohol (AA, 0-640 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 64 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 94 h for all AA concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. VII. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various concentrations allyl methyl disulphide (AMD, 0-640 μg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 68 h for 0 (DMSO control) and 160 μg/ml AMD and 100 h for all other AMD concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various combinations of ajoene (Aj, 0-64 µg/ml) and 0.02 µg/ml metronidazole (MTZ) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 82 h for all inhibitor concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. IX. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various combinations of ajoene (Aj, 0-64 µg/ml) and 1 µg/ml metronidazole (MTZ) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 82 h for all inhibitor concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. X. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various combinations of ajoene (Aj, 0-64 µg/ml) and 2 µg/ml metronidazole (MTZ) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 82 h for all inhibitor concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. XI. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various combinations of ajoene (Aj, 0-64 μg/ml) and 2.5 μg/ml metronidazole (MTZ) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 μg/ml (DMSO control) and 82 h for all inhibitor concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Appendix I: *Spironucleus vortens* ATCC growth curves

**Fig. XII.** Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various combinations of ajoene (Aj, 0-64 µg/ml) and 3 µg/ml metronidazole (MTZ) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 82 h for all inhibitor concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
Fig. XIII. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (ATCC strain) growth with various combinations of ajoene (Aj, 0-64 µg/ml) and 4 µg/ml metronidazole (MTZ) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader). Final yields were extrapolated at 72 h for 0 µg/ml (DMSO control) and 82 h for all inhibitor concentrations, in order to calculate minimum inhibitory concentrations (see Chapter 4).
APPENDIX II

*Spironucleus vortens* (*Sv1* strain) growth curves (raw data from Chapter 4).

**Fig. XIV.** Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (*Sv1* strain) growth with various concentrations of ajoene (0-100 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader) (see Chapter 4).
Fig. XV. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (Sv1 strain) growth with various concentrations of diallyl disulphide (DADS, 0-100 µg.ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader) (see Chapter 4).
Fig. XVI. Inhibition of *Spironucleus vortens* (*Sv1* strain) growth with various concentrations of allyl alcohol (AA, 0-100 µg/ml) by automated optical cell density monitoring (420-580 nm, Bioscreen C Reader) (see Chapter 4).
Composition and Antimicrobial Properties of Sulphur-containing Constituents of Garlic (*Allium sativum*)

Catrin F. Williams and David Lloyd

Abstract

Active components of commercially available garlic preparations include; allicin, ajoene, allyl alcohol, diallyl disulphide and higher polysulphides. However as a natural mixture the antimicrobial effects may be synergistic and the most effective treatments obtained from fresh garlic extracts. Here, we summarise recent advances in the molecular mechanisms of action of these compounds and suggest future developments whereby chemical modification might be effective at improving the natural properties. Despite more than 6000 years of use, garlic appears not to have induced microbial resistance, a factor which is attributed both to its chemical complexity and to dynamics of degradation of the primary active component allicin.

Introduction

The antimicrobial properties of *Allium sativum* (garlic) have been exploited for thousands of years. Knowledge regarding its cultivation was first documented by the ancient Sumerians, ca. 2600-2100 BC, with the origin of garlic being assigned to the Tien Shan
Mountains of Kyrgyzstan and Kazakhstan. From here, garlic is thought to have been transported along ancient trading routes between China and the Mediterranean [1, 2]. Since then, the medicinal properties of garlic have been widely documented by the ancient Egyptians, Romans and Grecians. Historically, garlic was frequently employed by the forefathers of modern day medicine, including Hippocrates and Pliny the Elder, to treat a variety of common human medical complaints such as gastrointestinal disorders, pneumonia and wounds. The popularity of garlic soared during the middle ages when it was found that garlic could be used as a preventative agent of the plague [1]. In 1858, Louis Pasteur was the first to scientifically document the antibacterial effect of garlic [3].

Today garlic is described as a broad-spectrum antimicrobial agent [4] exhibiting antibacterial, antifungal, antiviral and antiprotozoal properties (Table 1). Its antimicrobial effects are believed to be attributed to a constituent of an ethyl alcohol-extractable constituent, diallyl thiosulphinate, or allicin as assigned by [5]. This study was the first to uncover the underlying chemistry of garlic by different extraction methods. In the garlic clove, the precursor of allicin, alliin, is physically separated from the enzyme alliinase by intracellular membranes, and resides in micro-compartments within the clove. Mechanical disruption of the clove destroys these separating membranes bringing allinase into contact with alliin, thereby rapidly producing allicin through condensation of two 2-propenesulfenic acid molecules (Figure 1). This contributes to the defence mechanism of the plant, with subsequent production of thiosulphinates and other repellent, sulphur-containing compounds [2].

Table 1. IC$_{50}$, MIC, and MLC values for microbial inhibition by garlic constituents and by freeze-dried garlic extract

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Yeast [38, 40, 50]</th>
<th>IC$_{50}$ values (mg ml$^{-1}$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Candida albicans</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diallyl disulphide</td>
<td>0.073 (0.5mM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allyl alcohol</td>
<td>0.058 (1mM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole garlic (freeze dried)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## B. Protists [1, 19]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constituent</th>
<th><em>Trichomonas vaginalis</em></th>
<th><em>Tritrichomonas foetus</em></th>
<th><em>Giardia intestinalis</em></th>
<th><em>Spironucleus vortens</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allyl methyl sulphide</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allyl sulphide (Diallyl sulphide)</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl propyl sulphide</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl sulphide</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diallyl disulphide</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimethyl disulphide</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dipropyl disulphide</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl propyl disulphide</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allyl mercapton</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.037</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allyl alcohol</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole garlic (freeze-dried)</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>7.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definitions: \( IC_{50} \) values, concentration required to inhibit growth by 50% using an optical density assay method. 
MIC values, minimal inhibitory concentrations to maintain the viable population (using plate counts) at its initial number. 
MLC values, minimal lethal concentrations to reduce viable population of to 0.1% of the starting inoculum count [97].
### C. Bacteria [76]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strain</th>
<th>Strain No.</th>
<th>MIC at 6h (mg ml(^{-1}))</th>
<th>MIC at 24h (mg ml(^{-1}))</th>
<th>MIC range at 24h (mg ml(^{-1}))</th>
<th>MLC at 6h (mg ml(^{-1}))</th>
<th>MLC at 24h (mg ml(^{-1}))</th>
<th>MLC range at 24h (mg ml(^{-1}))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Staphylococcus aureus</em></td>
<td>NCIMB 11857</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.6 to 1.3</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.6 to 1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Staphylococcus aureus</em></td>
<td>INT 21</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.6 to 1.3</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>INT M11</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.6 to 1.3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Candida albicans</em></td>
<td>INT C6</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>INT M18</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bacillus cereus</em></td>
<td>NCTC 2599</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bacillus subtilis</em></td>
<td>NCIMB 8993</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</em></td>
<td>INT M29</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Proteus mirabilis</em></td>
<td>R3.68</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>INT M40</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
<td>NCTC 10418</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Listeria monocytogenes</em></td>
<td>NCTC 11994</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salmonella dublinii</em></td>
<td>INT M41</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salmonella enteriditis</em></td>
<td>P227165</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>1.3 to 2.5</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organism</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Growth</td>
<td>MIC 1</td>
<td>MIC 2</td>
<td>MIC 3</td>
<td>MIC 4</td>
<td>MIC 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salmonella typhimurium</em></td>
<td>P227221</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Klebsiella areogenes</em></td>
<td>NCTC 8172</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>2.5 to 5.0</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>5.0 to 10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em></td>
<td>NCTC 8626</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>5.0 to 10.0</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lactobacillus plantarum</em></td>
<td>INT L11</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>10.0 to &gt;100</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>29.5 – 49.6</td>
<td>75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lactobacillus acidophilus</em></td>
<td>NCTC 1748</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>10.0 to &gt;100</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>31.2 – 51.5</td>
<td>75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lactobacillus acidophilus</em></td>
<td>INT L9</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>10.0 to &gt;100</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>36 – 54.3</td>
<td>75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lactobacillus casei</em></td>
<td>NCIMB</td>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>15.0 to &gt;100</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>37.5 – 57.7</td>
<td>75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11970</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Enterococcus faecium</em></td>
<td>INT AP7</td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>10.0 to &gt;100</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
<td>100+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pediococcus pentosaceus</em></td>
<td>INT AP8</td>
<td>33.5</td>
<td>34.5</td>
<td>25.0 to &gt;100</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
<td>100+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pediococcus pentosaceus</em></td>
<td>INT AP6</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>39.7</td>
<td>37.5 to &gt;100</td>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
<td>100+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After Block, 1985 [1, 10].
Appendix III: Garlic review

**Fig 1.** Formation of allicin (diallyl thiosulphinate) from alliin by the action of allinase.

Since experimental research into the antimicrobial properties of garlic began, two key aspects of its action have yet to be solved: (i) what is the mechanism of garlic’s broad antimicrobial activity, and (ii) how it is that there are no reports of organisms with acquired resistance against garlic extracts or their constituents?

**Garlic Chemistry**

In 1844 Wertheim [6], first obtained pungent smelling oil from garlic using steam distillation and used the term allyl for the hydrocarbon it contained. It was not until 1944 that Cavallito and Bailey explored different methods of extraction [5], to produce diallyl disulphide, a diallyl thiosulphinate (allicin), and \( \text{S-allylcysteine sulphone} \) (alliin) (Figure 2 a,b). A cysteine sulphoxide and the enzyme alliinase were isolated four years later [7]. Lawson in 1996 separated several other cysteine sulphoxides and their corresponding thiosulphinates [8]. The pathways by which allicin decomposes [9], were elucidated using its analogue, \( \text{S-methyl methane thiosulphinate} \) (Figure 3) [10]. Various other degradative pathways yield ajoene and vinyldithiiins, both of which have potent antimicrobial properties.
Appendix III: Garlic review

Fig. 2. (a) Sulphur compounds extracted from garlic. (b) Transformations of thiosulphinates. [1, 8].
Appendix III: Garlic review

Fig. 3. Degradation pathways of allicin. After Lawson, 1996 [1, 8].

**Allicin**

Since the antimicrobial potential of allicin was first revealed in the 1940’s, interest in the compound has burgeoned with respect to its possible application as a new antimicrobial agent. As the primary biologically active component of the garlic clove, the inhibitory effect of allicin has been quantified against a broad range of pathogenic organisms (Table 1). In addition, it out-performs commonly prescribed antibiotics in that it is effective against not only against Gram positive and Gram negative bacteria, but also against protists, fungi and viruses [11].
Appendix III: Garlic review

The lipophilic nature of allicin is implicated in its mode of action, conferring its ability to cross membrane barriers with relative ease [12]. Once inside the cell, allicin can powerfully inhibit thiol-dependent enzymes which are important in maintaining redox balance within the organism. These include cysteine proteinases, alcohol dehydrogenases and thioredoxin reductases, demonstrated in *Entamoeba histolytica*, a protozoan parasite which causes dysentery in humans [13]. The cysteine proteinases of the malaria parasite, *Plasmodium falciparum* (falcipain 2), and of the African sleeping sickness parasite, *Trypanosoma brucei* (rhodesain), are also inhibited by allicin, both of which are important factors in the pathogenicity of these protists [14]. Interestingly, mammalian cysteine proteinases are not as sensitive as the pathogens described above to allicin, with 10-fold higher concentration required to cause cytotoxicity [13]. The differing sensitivities of the host and pathogen to allicin may be due to the fact that microbial cells possess little or no glutathione, an important thiol involved in cellular redox cycling. Therefore, once allicin thiolates the essential thiol-dependent enzymes described above, the pathogen has no means to successfully establish their reactivation.

Studies into the biological activity of allicin have been highly problematic due to the instability of this compound. Indeed, allicin is not only unstable but so reactive with O₂ upon formation, that storage can only be short term and under anaerobic conditions at low temperatures. At ambient temperature, or upon heating, allicin molecules undergo partial decomposition by one of two processes. The first results in the formation of allyl alcohol, diallyl disulphide, and diallyl trishulphide as well as higher polysulphides, and the second leads to the formation of ajoene. In addition, self-decomposition of allicin to thioacrolein produces vinyl dithiins by dimerization [10]. *In vitro* experiments involving human pathogens require at least ambient temperature for skin microbes such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, or with gut microbes, such as *Escherichia coli*, a temperature of 37°C to grow optimally. This means that in such experiments there is only a short window of opportunity for testing allicin before the compound begins to decompose (within 16 h at 23°C) [15]. Temperature is also likely to be a significant factor during *in vivo* experiments using animal models or in clinical trials involving allicin. In addition, oral administration of allicin results in loss of the compound during passage through the stomach, where the harsh acidic conditions (pH *ca.* 2) aids degradation to its breakdown products. However, these breakdown products of allicin some of which are far more...
stable than allicin, also possess broad-ranging antimicrobial activities, so that efficacy of action is enhanced rather than lost after acid hydrolysis.

Ajoene

First characterised by Block et al. [16], ajoene is produced by the decomposition of allicin during methanolic extraction. Interest in this biologically active garlic constituent began when, in an earlier study, an unidentified component of garlic was capable of antithrombotic activity [17]. Although most of the research involving ajoene has focussed on its role as an effective antithrombotic and anticancer agent [18], its potential as an antibiotic has also recently come to light (see table). Ajoene is primarily composed of two vinyl dithiins, which have also recently been shown to have an antiparasitic effect against the protozoan fish parasite *Spiroplasma vortens* [19], and can exist in the *E* or *Z* forms, with the *Z* form having slightly higher biological activity. Its stability is much higher than that of allicin, with the *E* form being more stable than the *Z* form to UV light, temperature and long term storage [20].

Ajoene has a particularly potent effect against HIV, and is thought to be an inhibitor of viral replication [14]. It is also reported to have high antifungal activity, with an MIC value of <20 µg/ml against *Candida albicans*, causative agent of thrush, and *Aspergillus niger*, associated with fungal ear infections, and is hypothesised to cause damage to the fungal cell wall [20a]. Naganawa et al. also quantified the inhibitory effect of ajoene against a range of fungi and bacteria [21], with Gram positives (e.g. *Bacillus cereus*) being more susceptible to ajoene than Gram negatives (e.g. *Escherichia coli*), having MIC’s of 5 and 152 µg/ml respectively on solid agar tests. Ajoene is also documented to have an antiparasitic effect against *Trypanosoma cruzi*, causative agent of Chagas disease, with 40 µM ajoene capable of eradicating the parasite from African green monkey VERO cells within 96 h [22]. Here, treatment with ajoene resulted in a significant change in the phospholipid composition of *T. cruzi*, thus having an antiproliferative effect against the parasite. Furthermore, a single dose of ajoene (50 mg/kg) combined with the anti-malarial compound, chloroquine (4.5 mg/kg), completely inhibited further development of *Plasmodium berghei* in mice, with no obvious acute toxic effects on the mice themselves [23].
Allyl Alcohol

Allyl alcohol, one of the simplest constituents of garlic and many of its commercial preparations, is both pharmacologically active and antimicrobial [2]. It is produced from more complex constituents by two routes; the self-condensation reactions of allicin, and also by the reaction of alliin (the direct precursor of allicin) with water [8]. Ingestion of garlic is followed by rapid release of allyl alcohol [24], and it has been detected in exhaled air after oral administration of all preparations tested, especially freeze-dried garlic powders in tablets [25]. In addition to the chemical hydrolyses of its two major garlic precursors, further transformations of the thiosulphinates, diallyl trisulphide and diallyl disulphide lead to the production of allyl alcohol in vivo [10, 26]; up to one-third of all the allyl groups present can be accounted for by these processes [8]. Similar metabolic transformations have been demonstrated in experiments with rats [27]. Its heat stability is greater than other anti-yeast garlic constituents [28]. Allyl alcohol is an inhibitor of alcohol dehydrogenase, largely due to the formation of its aldehyde oxidation product, acrolein [29, 30]. As a hepato-toxicant, allyl alcohol dosage has to be controlled; even so up to 100ul per kg body weight in rats administered by gastric tube gave no measurable toxicity as indicated in subsequent investigations on hepatocytes [31]. Valuable insights into mechanisms of inhibition have come from studies of yeasts. Functionally significant of the 20 or so different alcohol dehydrogenases in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (baker’s yeast) [32], and involved in allyl alcohol toxicity include the cytoplasmically-located ADH1 and 2 isoforms and the mitochondrial ADH3. The former enzymes are involved in ethanol formation and cellular growth [33], whereas the latter is not so well characterised, but may well be functional as a redox shuttle for the translocation of mitochondrial reducing equivalents (as NADH) from the mitochondrial matrix to the cytosol [34].

In the methylotrophic yeast, *Pichia pastoris*, allyl alcohol itself exerts little toxicity [35], but again acrolein, its oxidation product does. For both *Candida albicans* [36-38], and the important protozoal pathogen infecting the human upper intestine, *Giardia intestinalis* [39], allyl alcohol is one of the most potent of the garlic components. A detailed two-photon laser scanning microscopy study of the redox changes in *C. albicans* revealed oxidation of NADH, depletion of glutathione and increased levels of reactive oxygen species [40]. Flow cytometry confirmed that cytotoxicity of allyl alcohol is mediated by oxidative stress. This results from disturbed intracellular redox status and
the accumulation of hydrogen peroxide and/or superoxide radical anions. Mitochondrial trans-membrane electrochemical potential was increased in the presence of 1mM allyl alcohol, and even with 200 times the MIC for this compound, glucose-supported respiration by intact organisms was unaffected. Thus the primary effects are not on mitochondria; it may well be that the major deleterious consequences of oxidative stress are on the physiology of transport eg. that involving the plasma-membrane membrane potential [41] as demonstrated in some other lower eukaryotes [42]. Synergistic action of combinations of diallyl disulphide or diallyl trisulphide with allyl alcohol against Candida utilis have been demonstrated [43]. Allyl alcohol also shows antiviral properties, for instance against HIV-infected cells [44].

**Diallyl disulphide**

Diallyl disulphide (DADS), another breakdown product in allium extracts is, like allyl alcohol, one of the most potent antimicrobials of the garlic constituents. Furthermore, it has been reported to inhibit cellular proliferation in human colon, liver and skin tumours [45]. Elevation of reactive oxygen species following DADS administration leads to apoptotic cell death in neuroblastomas [46]; in leukaemic cells, activation of the caspase-3 pathway is implicated in this process [47]. Since the 1980’s the number of reports of anti-tumour cell activity of DADS have burgeoned and now can be counted in their hundreds. Two recent reports [48, 49], stress that the modulation of cellular redox networks are implicated. Similarly the range of its antimicrobial applications continues to be extended. In a detailed examination of the metabolic effects of DADS on the important pathogenic yeast, Candida albicans, showed that at least three of its primary target sites reside at the inner membrane of the mitochondria [50]. The glucose-stimulated respiration of whole organisms was 80% inhibited by 1mM DADS, as was the succinate-driven O\(_2\) consumption of isolated mitochondria. Both an oligomycin-like inhibition of mitochondrial ATP synthase and a direct action at the level of the electron transport chain was demonstrated. The observed effects on the respiratory chain itself indicated that two different sites (at complexes I and IV) were implicated; moreover, this garlic constituent was more effective at preventing oxidative phosphorylation than oligomycin (the most commonly-used and highly effective inhibitor of mitochondrial ATP synthesis by the F\(_{1}\)-F\(_{0}\) ATP synthase). These events resulted in the
partial collapse of the trans-membrane electrochemical potential across the inner mitochondrial membrane of this highly aerobic yeast.

Intensities of NAD(P)H fluorescence both in the mitochondrial and cytosolic compartments were diminished more than three-fold, the cellular glutathione content was similarly decreased, and a five-fold higher fluorogenic detection of reactive O\textsubscript{2} species was almost immediately observed after DADS administration.

Mitochondrial dysfunction is well-known to be a critical condition that generally presages a life-death decision for cells. This is so in model organisms (eg. in yeasts) [51] and in mammalian tissues, eg. \textit{in vivo} in the mammalian heart as well as in isolated cardiomyocytes [52]. An early indicator is the collapsing mitochondrial membrane potential that accompanies a cascade of events leading to apoptosis or necrosis. The time course of cell death in \textit{C. albicans} follows a brief exposure (30min) to 0.5 mM DADS as assessed using the AlexaFluor 488 annexinV/propidium iodide (apoptotic/necrotic) method. In the two-photon laser scanning microscope it was possible to differentially count organisms in which plasma-membrane phosphatidyl-serine had been externalized (green fluorescence) alongside those in which plasma membranes had become permeabilized, allowing entry of propidium iodide (red fluorescence). Even within the transient exposure time, an increase of 11% of the population became necrotic as compared with a control untreated suspension of organisms. Apoptosis became evident within 2h of removal of DADS, affecting 20% of the organisms; at this time 50% of the cells had become necrotic. Further loss of viability to 80% was indicated by 4h.

We have suggested [50, 53] that the pivotal initiating event in the complex downstream sequence that leads to cell death in general, as well as in DADS-treated \textit{C. albicans}, is thiol-depletion. In yeasts, as in mammals, the predominant thiol is glutathione: oxidation within the cells of the intra-mitochondrial redox state is a major consequence. Accordingly we confirmed that glutathione-S-transferase purified from equine liver (G6511, Sigma Aldrich) was inhibited by DADS; 40% inhibition was observed with this garlic component at 0.5 mM.\textsuperscript{50} Control experiments indicated that chemical oxidation of glutathione by DADS (i.e. that in the absence of the enzyme) did not occur. In \textit{C. albicans in vivo} glutathione depletion after DADS treatment was observed by decreased fluorescence of its mono-chlorobimane derivative. Within 5 min, relocation of the glutathione adduct to the yeast vacuole was observed. The importance of glutathione antioxidant defence systems in the maintenance of yeast viability has been
repeatedly stressed [54]. Mutants for glutamyl-cysteine synthetase (GCS1), a key enzyme of the pathway of biosynthesis of this tri-peptide are highly sensitive to induction of apoptosis [55].

**Higher Polysulphides**

The higher polysulphide diallyl trisulphide has an LC$_{50\%}$ of 0.8–5.5 µg ml$^{-1}$ against *Trypanosoma brucei*, the causative agent of sleeping sickness. This LC$_{50\%}$ value is far below the recommended threshold for human administration of the compound (this being 25 µg/ml). In fact, diallyl trisulphide is already commercially available in China as Dasuansu, commonly prescribed in the treatment of *Entamoeba histolytica* and *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections in humans. Both DADS and diallyl trisulphide (20-500uM) affect the fluidity of the phospholipid hydrocarbon cores of lipid bilayers in model membranes [56]. Whereas tumour cell and platelet model membranes containing unsaturated fatty acids and cholesterol, and Candida model membranes containing ergosterol became partially rigidified by these allyl compounds, bacterial model membranes were not. These results indicate a plasma- membrane based site of action for the garlic constituents.

In an extensive study by, 40 clinical isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus*, 60 clinical isolates of MRSA and a total of 176 clinical isolates of *Candida* and *Aspergillus* spp. were tested for their susceptibility to four diallyl sulphides [57]. The MICs of these sulphur-containing compounds increased with an increasing number of S atoms as follows; diallyl tetrasulphide > diallyl trisulphide > diallyl disulphide > diallyl monosulphide. This effect was also seen against *Helicobacter pylori*, which causes chronic gastritis in humans [58], and also in the nosocomial pathogens *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. Block speculates that this effect is probably due to the weakening of the S-S bonds with increasing number of S atoms, making the compound more reactive to –SH groups in the pathogen [2].

**Whole Garlic Extract**

It would seem evident that in order to preserve the complex chemistry of the garlic clove, it would be necessary to maintain, as much as possible, the reaction products generated the first moments after a clove is crushed. Numerous studies have thus investigated the antimicrobial activity of fresh or freeze-dried garlic powder. Freeze-dried
garlic powder is often packaged into capsules which are commercially available in health food shops as herbal supplements. However, the biological activity of such products is much reduced, as compared to that of fresh garlic, due to the huge reduction in biologically active constituents [38] (Figure 4). The antimicrobial activity of whole garlic extract is limited due to the high dose required to exert an effect. For example, in the case of the human vaginal parasite *Trichomonas vaginalis*, the IC$_{50\%}$ of whole garlic extract (0.28 mg/ml) is 40x greater than that of the garlic constituent allyl alcohol (0.007 mg/ml). Despite this, clinical trials conducted by Soffar involving whole garlic as an antigiardial agent proved promising, deeming it safe for patient administration and shortening the treatment duration time as compared to the traditional drug of choice, metronidazole (Flagyl) [59]. In third world countries such as Cameroon in West Africa traditionally employ garlic juice to treat African eye worm infections caused by the nematode *Loa loa*, with no adverse effects observed to the cornea [60].

![Graph](image_url)

**Fig 4.** Comparison of yields of sulphur compounds from gas chromatography-mass spectrometry analysis of ■, fresh garlic extract (FGE) and □, garlic powder extract with
Appendix III: Garlic review

respect to production of 2-vinylidithiin from FGE taken as 100% yield. Graphs separated
due to large variation in scale, 2VD, 2-vinylidithiin; 3VD, 3-vinylidithiin; AMT, allyl
methyl trisulphide; DAT, diallyltrisulphide; MeS(O)SMe, methane methyl thiosulphinate;
AMS, allyl methyl sulphide; DMS, dimethyl sulphide; DAS, diallyl sulphide; AMD, allyl
methyl disulphide; MPrD, methyl propyl disulphide; DMT dimethyl trisulphide; DATET,
dimethyl tetrasulphide; DAD, diallyl disulphide [38].

An interesting property of garlic is its ability to selectively inhibit pathogenic
organisms but not harmless commensals. This is especially true in the case of a non-
pathogenic genus of bacteria, the Lactobacilli. These “probiotic” microbes reside in the
human intestinal, vaginal and urinary tract and are themselves able to inhibit the growth
and colonisation of invading pathogenic organisms [61]. Rees et al. [62] found that the
MIC of freeze-dried garlic extract was 10-fold higher for the Lactic acid bacteria (e.g.
Lactobacillus casei MIC range 15-20 mg/ml) than that of pathogenic bacteria (e.g.
Bacillus cereus MIC range 1.3-2.5 mg/ml). Thus the practise of administration of garlic
constituents holds a great advantage over the use of currently prescribed antibiotics which
do not differentiate between pathogenic and non-pathogenic microbes. Thus a course of
antibiotics can wipe-out the natural microflora of the gut, and sometimes lead to
secondary infection; this is especially true in the case of Clostridium difficile which cases
pseudo-membranous colitis [63]. Evidently, any reduction in the current antibiotic dosage
would be very welcome. Indeed, garlic is also capable of working in synergy with
antibiotics such as ampicillin, as demonstrated against Staphylococcus aureus [64]. The
same study also revealed that ajoene had an additive effect with ampicillin against
Escherichia coli. Furthermore, Cottrell showed that a garlic extract had a synergistic
effect with methicillin against MRSA, thus re-establishing the susceptibility of this
“superbug” to methicillin treatment [65].

Conclusion

At the beginning of the 20th century the discovery of antibiotics revolutionised
modern medicine. However, soon after their introduction, the development of widespread
resistance to these antimicrobials soon became apparent. Today, microbial resistance
pathways have been characterised for all antibiotics introduced under clinical and
agricultural settings [66]. In the case of garlic, however, there have been no documented
Appendix III: Garlic review

cases of resistance during its long history as an antimicrobial agent. Indeed, it has been estimated that resistance to beta-lactams is 1000-fold more likely than resistance to allicin [13]. This is attributed to the ability of this garlic constituent to target a wide range of cysteine-containing enzymes, along with the plethora of biologically active breakdown products that are formed on the decomposition of this evanescent compound. Furthermore, the evident selective and differential toxicity of garlic towards human pathogenic cells (eg tumour cell lines) means that in vivo administration is not a problem. As a result, some studies have already begun taking appropriate measures to design new drugs based on the complex chemistry of garlic. It is also possible to mimic the defence mechanism of the garlic clove using treatments containing the alliinase enzyme and its substrate, alliin, to produce allicin in situ. The treatments, which included other sulphoxide substrates of alliinase to produce more stable active products, all produced an antifungal effect against the cysteine-proteases of the rice blast fungus Magnaporthe grisea [67]. Synthetic construction of a stable S-(4-methoxyphenyl) propyl thiosulphinate derivative of allicin [68], and later an S-p-tolyl t-butyl thiosulphinate allicin analogue [69], have been described: both of these compounds require further assessment of their probable antimicrobial effects and possible toxicity to humans. However, these simple, synthetically produced representatives of allicin are the first steps along a brand new avenue of chemotherapy, which has the potential to revolutionize the way we treat microbial infections in a more rational manner.

Recent advances in our understanding of biochemical mechanisms of action of garlic constituents focus on the redox reactions at the core of the energy supply of the growing cell [70]. A delicate balance in redox reactions, driven by ultradian clocks, maintains the vitality and viability of the yeast organism [71]. The important central components (NAD(P)H, glutathione, thioredoxins, glutaredoxins) are pivotal in the production and elimination of reactive O2 species. Oscillatory changes in redox state are observed in the mitochondrial and cytosolic compartments [72]. It is in the vicinity of these reactions that Allium sativum constituents interfere by making the redox potential more oxidized and hence depleting thiol pools. Glutathione reduction is of key significance in preservation of vitality and hence survival, not only of yeast, but also of mammalian cardiomyocytes [73]. The future challenge is to determine how it is that the sensitivities of this central mechanism is so much more in many microbial systems [1, 11,
Appendix III: Garlic review

19, 38, 39, 74-76], than in those of their higher animal hosts, *eg* fish [74, 75], and humans.

Acknowledgements
The authors would like to thank Dr. Sue Plummer and Dr. Nigel Plummer of Cultech Biospeciality Products (Baglan Industrial Park, Port Talbot, Wales, UK and Dr. David Williams of Neem Biotech, St. Mellons, Cardiff, UK for expert collaboration and financial support. CFW holds an EPSRC Postgraduate Studentship.

References
Appendix III: Garlic review

Appendix III: Garlic review

Appendix III: Garlic review

[76] Nya, E.J.; Dawood, Z.; Austin, B. *J. Fish Dis.* 2010, 33, 293-300.
APPENDIX IV

TECHNICAL DESIGN NOTE

Evaluation of two novel methods for assessing intracellular oxygen

Catrin F Williams¹, M Kombrabail², K Vijayalakshmi², Nick White³, G Krishnamoorthy²,⁴ and David Lloyd¹,⁴

¹ School of Biosciences, Cardiff University, Cathays Park, Cardiff CF10 3AT, UK
² Department of Chemical Sciences, Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, Homi Bhabha Road, Mumbai, 400 005, India
³ Vision Science Bioimaging Labs, School of Optometry and Vision Sciences, Cardiff University, Maindy Road, Cardiff CF24 4LU, UK
E-mail: gk@tifr.res.in and Lloydd@cardiff.ac.uk

Received 15 October 2011, in final form 21 February 2012
Published 19 June 2012
Online at stacks.iop.org/MST/23/084005

Abstract

The ability to resolve the spatio-temporal complexity of intracellular O₂ distribution is the ‘Holy Grail’ of cellular physiology. In an effort to obtain a non-invasive approach of mapping intracellular O₂ tensions, two methods of phosphorescent lifetime imaging microscopy were examined in the current study. These were picosecond time-resolved epiphosphorescence microscopy (single 0.5 μm focused spot) and two-photon confocal laser scanning microscopy with pinhole shifting. Both methods utilized nanoparticle-embedded Ru complex (45 nm diameter) as the phosphorescent probe, excited using pulsed outputs of Ti-sapphire Tsunami lasers (710-1050 nm). The former method used a 1 ps pulse width excitation beam with vertical polarization via a dichroic mirror (610 nm, XF43) and a 20 × objective (NA 0.55, Nikon). Transmitted luminescence (1-2 × 10⁴ counts s⁻¹) was collected and time-correlated single photon counted decay times measured. Alternatively, an unmodified Zeiss LSM510 Confocal NLO microscope with 40 × objective (NA 1.3) used successively shifted pinhole positions to collect image data from the lagging trail of the raster scan. Images obtained from two-photon excitation of a yeast (Schizosaccharomyces pombe) and a flagellate fish parasite (Spironucleus vortens), electroporated with Ru complex, indicated the intracellular location and magnitude of O₂ gradients, thus confirming the feasibility of optical mapping under different external O₂ concentrations. Both methods gave similar lifetimes for Ru complex phosphorescence under aerobic and anaerobic gas phases. Estimation of O₂ tensions within individual fibroblasts (human dermal fibroblast (HDF)) and mammary adenocarcinoma (MCF-7) cells was possible using epiphosphorescence microscopy. MCF-7 cells showed lower intracellular O₂ concentrations than HDF cells, possibly due to higher metabolic rates in the former. Future work should involve construction of higher resolution 3D maps of Ru coordinate complex lifetime distribution in cultured cell lines.

Keywords: intracellular O₂, two-photon excitation microscopy, pinhole shifting, time-correlated single photon counting, phosphorescence quenching, Ru complex, nanoparticles

(Some figures may appear in colour only in the online journal)

⁴ Author to whom any correspondence should be addressed.
1. Introduction

The determination of oxygen tensions within living cells in vivo and in vitro is of the utmost importance for a deeper understanding of function of their biochemical and physiological functions. $O_2$ and its reduced products are essential not only for energy production (Chance and Williams 1955), but also for the maintenance of appropriate redox balance (Aon et al 2010) and cell signalling (Gitler and Danon 2003). Despite 50 years of research, uncertainties and controversies revolve around published values for tissue and intracellular $pO_2$. Many diverse methods have been employed; all are subject to problematic aspects and a truly non-invasive approach is still awaited.

Living organisms may be regarded as machines that harness the chemistry of $O_2$ in a highly controlled and precisely regulated series of free-energy conserving reactions. Thus a potentially catastrophically powerful oxidant is delivered to its sites of use with astonishing efficiency and minimal side reactions. Consequently the air we breathe (20.9%; 21.2 kPa $O_2$) represents for biological systems a huge excess of $O_2$. When studied in vitro, $O_2$-reactive systems of biological origin have highly avid binding characteristics and these become $O_2$-saturated at much lower partial pressures than ambient. The human $O_2$-delivery system (Vanderkooi et al 1991) displays a series of step-wise decreasing $O_2$ levels from alveolar air in equilibrium with arterial blood (containing the equivalent of 100 $\mu M$ $O_2$) to the discharge of blood oxyhaemoglobin (depending on $CO_2$ tension) occurring with the range 80-20 mmHg = 60-30 $\mu M$ $O_2$. The oxyhaemoglobin store of red muscle begins to unload at below 10 $\mu M$ $O_2$ and the working $pO_2$ in active muscle is only about 3 mmHg (Wittenberg and Wittenberg 1989). The mean $O_2$ levels within the cells of some other human tissues are also unexpectedly low, e.g. 6-16 mmHg in white brain cortex (Cater et al 1961) and 7 mmHg in kidney medulla (Brezis et al 1961) and 7 mmHg in kidney medulla (Brezis et al 1961) and 7 mmHg in kidney medulla (Brezis et al 1961). Sites of $O_2$ utilization within cells include the mitochondria, peroxisomes and the membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum. Cytochrome $c$ oxidase, the binuclear Cu-Fe haemoprotein, reacts by way of a multistage cyclic mechanism whereby a concerted and highly efficient four-electron reduction of $O_2$ on the inner surface of the inner mitochondrial membrane (Km $O_2 < 0.1$ $\mu M$, Schindler 1964) leads to a residual steady-state level of $O_2$ that has not yet been accurately assessed. This can, however, be estimated indirectly by in situ non-invasive observations of the redox states of respiratory chain components using fluorimetric measurements for NAD(P)H (Chance et al 2005), and spectrophotometric measurements for flavoproteins and cytochromes (Jones and Mason 1978, Lloyd et al 1983).

Arguments that experimental conditions (e.g. use of anaesthetics) contribute to very low $pO_2$ values (Whalen and Nair 1967) in mammalian tissues do not apply in experiments with cultured cell lines and microorganisms. In many microorganisms, and especially in bacteria inhabiting low-oxygen environments, affinities for $O_2$ are very high (Lloyd 2002). Thus in Escherichia coli the cytochrome $bd$ has a Km $O_2$ of 5 nM $O_2$ (D’Mello et al 1996).

The heterogeneous intracellular distribution of these sites of biological oxidation between individual classes of organelles and membranes results in a highly dynamic pattern of $O_2$ gradients on a sub-micrometre scale. The ‘Holy Grail’ of cellular physiology is to resolve the spatio-temporal complexity of intracellular $O_2$ distribution by constructing four-dimensional maps. Although two-photon excitation enables their dynamic imaging (Lemar et al 2007), quantification of the various species of reactive $O_2$ (OH, $O_2^\cdot$, $H_2O_2$ and singlet $O_2$) in the past has largely relied on indirect data and has been often overestimated (Murphy 2009). On a larger scale, the dynamic distribution of $O_2$ in vivo in body fluids, tissues and organs is an important research aim, and a number of fluorophores and luminophores have been used for this purpose (Vanderkooi et al 1991, Vinogradov et al 1996, Devor et al 2011). Important features of delivery of $O_2$ to tissues thereby emerge.

Fluorescence lifetimes of organic fluorophores are mostly of the order of 10-20 ns and the diffusion path of a small molecule is very short (Suhling et al 2004). Extra time during which diffusion may occur greatly increases the volume of solution that influences the excited state of each fluorophore molecule (Vaughan and Weber 1970). Thus for some exceptionally long-lived cases, e.g. pyrenebutyric acid (100 ns in air-saturated water), the $O_2$-sensing sphere of influence of the probe is increased from 100 to 1000 times over that volume affecting the shorter lived excited molecules. This exceptionally long-lived fluorescent state has been employed for $O_2$-mapping in living cells, e.g. in cultured cells of mouse liver by the use of quantitative fluorescence microscopy (Benson et al 1980) and in Amoeba proteus (Podgorski et al 1981). The even longer lifetimes provided by $O_2$-quenchable phosphorescent luminophores (Vanderkooi et al 1987, Elson et al 2004, DeGraaf and Demas 2005), together with their other desirable photophysical properties (Amoroso et al 2007, 2008, Coogan et al 2010, Fernandez-Moreira et al 2010, Thorp-Greenwood et al 2011, Lloyd et al 2011) make them substances of choice for a burgeoning body of research.


In this paper we show that two independent approaches, namely pinhole shifting in a two-photon excitation beam and epiphosphorescence time-correlated single photon counting (TCSPC), give similar estimates of local $O_2$ concentrations within several different single-celled organisms and in suspension.
2. Materials and methods

2.1. Yeast and spironucleus cultures

The fission yeast Schizosaccharomyces pombe 972h- was maintained and grown on Petri dishes containing Sabouraud Maltose Agar (Difco). Organisms were transferred to unbaffled Ehrlenmeyer flasks (50 ml) containing 10 ml YEPD liquid medium (0.3% yeast extract, 1% peptone and 1% glucose) and grown at 30 °C for 2 days on a rotary shaker at 150 rpm. Before electroporation, repeated centrifugation for 3 min at 2000 rpm (3000 g min) and re-suspension in 1.0 M sorbitol solution removed all nutrients. Spironucleus vortens was cultured as described by Millet et al. (2010).

2.2. Human cells

Cultured cell lines, human mammary adenocarcinoma, MCF-7, were from the European Collection of Cell Cultures, Porton Down, Wiltshire, UK. Human fibroblasts (human dermal fibroblast (HDF) cells) were from TIFR Biology stocks. Cancer cells and HDF were maintained in Eagles Minimal Essential Medium supplemented with 10% foetal bovine serum, penicillin and streptomycin. Detachment from the plastic culture flasks was carried out using trypsin/EDTA, and was followed by re-suspension in growth medium.

2.3. Nanoparticle preparation

The Ru coordinate complex employed as a phosphorescent probe here has been extensively used and has proven a highly efficient O2 sensor. Reagents (from Sigma-Aldrich) were RuCl3 (57 mg, 0.0276 mmol) and 4,7-diphenyl-1,10-phenanthroline disulfonic acid disodium salt (518 mg, 0.0965 mmol) in 20 ml distilled water refluxed with stirring for 2 days. After filtration and rotary evaporation, the product, Ru[(dpp(SO3Na)2]Cl2.6H2O, was passed down a Sephadex G25 size exclusion column and eluted with water. The first brown and purple fractions were discarded and the red fraction dried.

The product is Ru[(dpp(SO3Na)2]Cl2.6H2O and it contains several isomers with the -SO3Na substituents randomly positioned on the phenyl rings. However, previous reports indicate that the mixture of isomers gives no evidence of heterogeneous fluorescent lifetimes. Characterization of the compound by standard methods was performed as described (Castellano and Lakowicz 1998). The nanosensors were prepared by incorporation of Ru[(dpp(SO3Na)2]Cl2.6H2O by encapsulation using radical polymerization added drop-wise into a solution of 43 ml hexane, 3.08 g AOT and 1.59 g Brij30 in a round bottom flask. The solution contained 2.7 g acrylamide and 0.8 g N,N '-methylenebis(acrylamide), and 9 ml of 10 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.2, were added to the microemulsion. The solution was stirred under argon throughout the preparation and deoxygenated by three freeze- vacuum-thaw cycles using liquid nitrogen as freezing medium.

To initiate the polymerization, 50 µl of a 10% (w/w) sodium bisulfite solution was added. The solution was kept under argon and stirred at room temperature for 2 h to ensure complete polymerization. Hexane was removed by rotary evaporation and the remaining solution was re-suspended in 96% ethanol and transferred to an Amicon ultra-filtration cell model 8200 (Millipore Corp., Bedford, MA, USA). The solution was washed with 600 ml 96% ethanol in order to separate surfactants, unreacted monomers and excess proteins from the

Figure 1. Two-photon confocal images of Ru coordinate complex electroporated into: (a) human adenocarcinoma (MCF-7) cells, (b) the flagellated protist, Sp. vortens, and (c) the fission yeast, S. pombe. Scale bars = 10 µm.

Figure 2. Schematic diagram of time-delayed image collection in the lagging direction of the raster scanned two-photon excitation beam (Ramshesh and Lemasters 2008).
sensors using a 100 kDa filter under 2 bar pressure. The polymer particles containing Ru complex were then resuspended in ethanol and passed through a suction filtration system (Millipore Corp., Bedford, MA) with a 0.025 \( \mu \)m nitrocellulose filter membrane and rinsed with 100 cm\(^3\) ethanol. Hydrodynamic particle diameter (45 nm) was determined by right-angle light scatter of 632.8 nm laser light (HeNe) using a BI-200SM Goniometer (Brookhaven Inst., New York). Nanoparticles were stored at \(-18^\circ C\). Re-suspension (18 mg mL\(^{-1}\)) was in 10 M sorbitol and dispersion was by treatment with 20 kHz ultrasound for 30 s at 4 \(^\circ\)C at an amplitude providing the maximum cavitation intensity.

Table 1. Lifetime of Ru nanoparticles in suspension or electroporated into MCF-7. Fixed yeast or HDF cells under aerobic (air) or anaerobic (nitrogen or argon) conditions, assayed by spectrometry, pinhole-shifting and epiphosphorescence-TCSPEC methods. Different gas phases are expressed as equivalent dissolved [O\(_2\)] (mM).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method Employed</th>
<th>[O(_2)] mM</th>
<th>Ru lifetime ((\mu)s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spectrometry(^a)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.88 (4.06)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ru nanoparticles in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspension or in</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1.81 (2.29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCF-7 cells (in parentheses))</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinhole shifting</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed yeast</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epiphosphorescence</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCSPC</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Values taken from Coogan et al (2010).

Table 2. Estimation of oxygen concentration in MCF-7 and HDF cells by the epiphosphorescence-TCSPEC method. Each measurement corresponds to a different cell. Measurements made at regions either close to the centre or close to plasma membrane were made in the same cell. Cells were equilibrated with air ([O\(_2\)] = 0.26 mM).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cell type</th>
<th>Cell no.</th>
<th>Close to centre</th>
<th>Close to plasma membrane</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCF-7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDF</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4. Electroporation of nanoparticles into yeast, Sp. vortens, or human cells

The Biorad Labs Gene Pulser Transfection Apparatus (Bio-Rad Laboratories, CA) was fitted with a Capacitor Extender set at 450 V for yeasts and 340 V for human cells (capacitance 900 \(\mu\)F, resistance 200 m\(\Omega\)). Electroporation vessels were of 400 \(\mu\)l working volume; three high voltage pulses were employed.

2.5. Pinhole shifting with two-photon excitation confocal microscopy

Ramshesh (2007) and Ramshesh and Lemaster (2008) have described time-resolved imaging of long-lifetime luminescence of europium (Eu\(^{3+}\)) microspheres, and explored some aspects of the potential usefulness of the method for biological applications (e.g. \(O_2\) sensing in feline myocytes). As in the original method used by these authors, we employed a Zeiss LSM510META NLO confocal microscope with a Coherent Chameleon 140 fs pulsed Ti:sapphire laser system (with integral pump lasers) for two-photon excitation at 900 nm. This excitation avoids much of the autofluorescence expected from shorter wavelengths and also the longer wavelengths reduce the level of detection of any unblocked (reflected) IR since the PMTs are less sensitive. The single-photon excitation peak is at 450 nm. While this is not definitely predictive of a two-photon peak at 900 nm (i.e. 2 \(\times\)) this was a natural wavelength to choose in the absence of other information. An analysis of excitation efficiency at all available wavelengths is quite difficult, given the many variables involved, and because of this we have yet to seek a better wavelength to use. We used about 20% of the maximum laser intensity at the specimen plane. The ruthenium nanoparticles were imaged through a 685 nm shortpass emission filter after beam separation by a 545 nm longpass dichroic mirror using a 40 \(\times\) 1.3NA Plan-Neofluar (Zeiss) oil immersion. The 685 nm shortpass filter is an IR blocking filter specifically designed for multiphoton imaging, i.e. to block the reflection of the Ti:S laser.
Figure 4. Typical phosphorescence trace (fitted line plot) of Ru complex-loaded nanoparticles taken up by HDF cells by epiphosphorescence. The estimated lifetime value is 0.93 μs. Residuals are given in the bottom panel. Residual intensity was due to residual levels of dark counts.

By collecting successive images from shifted confocal pinhole positions to image data from the lagging trail of the raster scan, a series of images was collected. Image intensities were determined using the standard Zeiss LSM software and plotted as a function of decay times (calculated from scan speed, pinhole offset and consequent image displacement from the optical axis).

2.6. Epiphosphorescence TCSPC

The ime-resolved fluorescence microscope was a combination of picosecond time-resolved fluorescence spectrometer and an inverted epiphosphorescence microscope (Paila et al 2011). The ime-resolved epiphosphorescence measurements were carried out with a TCSPC setup coupled with a picosecond laser. A titanium-sapphire picosecond laser beam (Tsunami, Spectra Physics) pumped by a diode pumped CWNd-vanadate laser (532 nm) (Millenia X, Spectra Physics), and frequency doubled by a doubler, was used to excite a single cell at 495 nm. The pulse width of the excitation laser beam was typically ~1 ps. A pulse repetition rate of 80 MHz was reduced to a repetition rate of 0.5 MHz by a pulse picker. The ps pulses obtained after frequency doubling were guided to the objective lens by a dichroic mirror and focussed onto a single cell. The diameter of the focused beam was ~0.5 μm in the xy plane. The measurements typically require ~100 luminesophore molecules in the observation volume. The instrument response function was estimated by the use of oxonol VI whose fluorescence lifetime is <50 ps. The full width at half maximum height of the instrument response function estimated in this way was ~160 ps. Phosphorescence decays were analyzed fir a single exponential function by using the nonlinear fitting. Since the repetition rate (0.5 MHz) of the excitation pulse was shorter than the measured lifetimes we ensured that our analysis took care of the incomplete decay coming from the previous excitation pulse. However, for single exponential decays this overlap does not cause any problem in the analysis even if the incomplete decays from the previous pulses are not taken into account.

3. Results, discussion and future work

Figure 1 shows that electroporation is an effective method for loading cells and organisms with polyacrylamide nanoparticles containing the Ru coordinate complex. For all three populations of organisms, nanoparticles have entered all cells. The images indicate that intracellular distributions are not confined to any specific subcellular organelles, although the distribution within a cell is heterogeneous and some organelles (e.g. nuclei) show lower intensity of emission. The method of laser scanning microscopy to acquire sequential images with delayed lifetimes (Ramschef 2007, Ramshesh and Lemasters 2008) is shown in figure 2. This confocal pinhole-shifting method was employed in the current study, and allowed adequate resolution of the extent of phosphorescence quenching inside cells (figure 3).

In an alternative approach, time-resolved single photon counting of epiphosphorescence provides traces of decay kinetics: a typical trace (figure 4) indicates that both approaches to the determination of Ru nanoparticle phosphorescence lifetimes give similar values. For ethanol fixed dead S. pombe pinhole shifting under anaerobic atmosphere gave a lifetime of 3.19 μs. This compared favourably to a corresponding value of 3.28 μs using the epiphosphorescence-TCSPC method, as well as a previously published value of 3.88 μs obtained using spectroscopy by Coogan et al (2010) (table 1). Slight differences in lifetime values obtained from the latter method may be due to more efficient N₂ saturation of the cell/particle suspension, whereby three cycles of O₂ evacuation were employed prior to regeneration of an anaerobic environment. Similar values were also obtained under air.

For living organisms or cultured cells, shorter phosphorescence lifetimes indicated quenching of Ru coordinate complex by intracellular O₂. Lifetime values obtained by epiphosphorescence TCSPC differed amongst the varying biological specimens, for example MCF-7 cells showed lower O₂ concentrations than fibroblasts (table 2), possibly due to the higher metabolic rates in the former. These data also suggested slight differences between micro sites within an individual cell, with higher O₂ concentrations near the periphery of the cytosol (table 2). As yet, we have no values for intra-mitochondrial pO₂ where at the point of O₂ consumption values would be much lower. Higher resolution of the subcellular structure would provide detailed maps of O₂ distribution in 3D using xy scans at successive z coordinates.

For this higher power objectives and appropriately adjusted parameter will be employed. Figure 5 shows a typical standard curve obtained from the epiphosphorescence-TCSPC method. This curve was used in estimations of O₂ concentrations inside a single HDF cell (figure 6). Time-dependent variations in intracellular O₂ concentration, if confirmed in a more systematic study, would be useful in revealing metabolic oscillations.
Major considerations of choice between the two methods employed in this study include biological information required and cost. While raster scanning two-photon excitation potentially provides 3D rendered images, epiphosphorescence photon quenching gives single point determinations. However, the cost implications of the former method are considerably greater.

Images obtained from two-photon excitation of a yeast (S. pombe) and a flagellate fish parasite (Sp. vortens) indicated the intracellular location and magnitude of O₂ gradients and confirmed the feasibility of optical mapping of cells and organisms under different external conditions. As well as obtaining measurements from single cells, Ru coordinatecomplex may prove useful to measure O₂ gradients in situ not only from intracellular sites, but also in interstitial extracellular locales (e.g. matrix elements in connective tissues) and in body fluids. However, further work is necessary to make reliable measurements of physiological significance.

Acknowledgments

CFW holds an EPSRC (EP/H501118/1) studentship with CASE Partner Neem Biotech Ltd. GK is a recipient of J C Bose National Research Fellowship of the Government of India. The authors thank Dr L F Olsen, Dr Allan Poulsen and Ms Anita Lunding for expert guidance on nanoparticle preparation. Multiphoton confocal pinhole shifted laser scanning microscopy was carried out at the Vision Science Bioimaging Labs facility, School of Optometry and Vision Sciences, Cardiff University.

References

Amoroso A J et al 2007 Rhenium fac-tricarbonyl bisimine complexes: biologically useful fluorochromes for cell imaging application Chem. Commun. 29 3066-8


Brevis M, Rosen S, Silva P and Epstein F H 1984 Renal ischemia in a new perspective Kidney Int. 26 375-83

Buck S M et al 2004 Optochemical nanosensor PEBBLEs: photonic explorers for bioanalysis with biologically localized embedding Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol. 8 540-6


Chance B and Williams G R 1955 The respiratory chain and oxidative phosphorylation J. Biol. Chem. 217 429-38


Devor A et al 2011 ‘Overshoot’ of O₂ is required to maintain baseline tissue oxygenation at locations distal to blood vessels J. Neurosci. 31 13676-81

D’Mello R, Hill S and Poole R K 1996 The cytochrome bd quinol oxidase in Escherichia coli has an extremely high oxygen affinity and two oxygen-binding haems: implications for regulation of activity in vivo by oxygen inhibition Microbiology 142 755-63


Elson D et al 2004 Time-domain fluorescence lifetime imaging applied to biological tissue Photochem. Photobiol. 79 795-801


Gitler C and Danon A (eds) Cellular Implications of Redox Signalling (London: Imperial College Press) p 427

Jones D P and Mason H S 1978 Gradients of O₂ in hepatocytes J. Biol. Chem. 253 4874-80


Millet C O M, Lloyd D, Williams C F and Cable J 2010 In vitro culture of the diplomonad fish parasite Spironucleus vortens reveals unusually fast doubling time and a typical biphasic growth J. Fish Dis. 34 71-3


Murphy M P 2009 How mitochondria produce reactive oxygen species Biochem. J. 417 I-13


Poulsen A K, Andersen A Z, Brasen J C, Sharff-Poulsen A 215
M and Olsen L F 2008a Probing glycolytic and membrane potential oscillations in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Biochemistry 47 7447-84
Poulsen A K, Arleth L, Almdal K and Scharff-Poulsen A M 2008b Unusually large acrylamide induced effect on the droplet size in AOT/Brij30 water-in-oil emulsions J. Colloid Interface Sci. 306 143-53
Ramshesh V K 2007 Luminescence lifetime imaging microscopy by confocal pinhole shifting (LLIM-CPS) PhD Thesis University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, NC, USA
Schindler F 1964 Oxygen kinetics in the cytochrome-oxygen reaction PhD Thesis University of Pennsylvania (University Microfilms Inc., Ann Arbor, MI)
Thorp-Greenwood F L et al 2011 A ‘Sleeping Trojan Horse’ which transports metals into cells localises in nucleoli and has potential for bionodal fluorescence/PET imaging Chem. Commun. 47 3096-8
Watts R J and Crosby G A 1971 Spectroscopic characterization of complexes of ruthenium (II) and iridium (II) with 4,4-diphenyl-2,2-bipyridine and 4,7-diphenyl-1,10-phenanthroline J. Am. Chem. Soc. 93 3184-8